

MODERN MONGOLIAN: A COURSE-BOOK

John Gaunt and L. Bayarmandakh

with the assistance of L. Chuluunbaatar

RoutledgeCurzon

Also available as a printed book
see title verso for ISBN details

MODERN MONGOLIAN:

A COURSE-BOOK

MODERN MONGOLIAN:

A COURSE-BOOK

John Gaunt and L.Bayarmandakh

with the assistance of **L.Chuluunbaatar**



LONDON AND NEW YORK

First published in 2004 by RoutledgeCurzon 11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE
Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada by RoutledgeCurzon 29 West 35th Street, New
York, NY 10001

RoutledgeCurzon is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group

This edition published in the Taylor & Francis e-Library, 2005.

“To purchase your own copy of this or any of Taylor & Francis or Routledge’s collection of
thousands of eBooks please go to <http://www.ebookstore.tandf.co.uk/>.”

© 2004 John Gaunt

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or
by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including
photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission
in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data A catalogue record of this book is available from
the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data A catalog record for this book has been
requested

ISBN 0-203-32942-2 Master e-book ISBN

ISBN - (Adobe e-Reader Format)

ISBN 0-7007-1305-0 hbk

ISBN 0-7007-1326-3 pbk

ISBN 0-7007-1336-0 pbk and cassette pack

CONTENTS

Preface	vii
The Mongolian Alphabet	viii
CHAPTER ONE	1
CHAPTER TWO	10
CHAPTER THREE	21
CHAPTER FOUR	32
CHAPTER FIVE	43
CHAPTER SIX	55
CHAPTER SEVEN	72
CHAPTER EIGHT	84
CHAPTER NINE	94
CHAPTER TEN	107
CHAPTER ELEVEN	118
CHAPTER TWELVE	133
CHAPTER THIRTEEN	147
CHAPTER FOURTEEN	160
Index of Mongolian inflexions	178
Mongolian-English vocabulary	181
English-Mongolian vocabulary	195
Keys to Drills and Exercises	221

PREFACE

The roots of this book go back to 1989. Having returned from a period of eighteen months in Mongolia, before commencing work on my PhD thesis, I was asked to do some teaching of the Mongolian language at the Mongolia and Inner Asia Studies Unit, in Cambridge. The absence of effective, English-based teaching materials at that point led me to entertain seriously the idea of writing a grammar of my own.

In the time that has followed, the contents of the book have undergone considerable revision. First, after I wrote the material, it benefited from the practised eye of Chuluunbaatar, the British Council Mongolian lector at Cambridge from 1989 to 1990. He was able to bring to bear many years' experience of teaching his native tongue to foreigners, including myself, and improved the Mongolian texts considerably. Bat-Ireedüi, also a Mongolian lector for the British Council, also provided considerable input and positive criticism.

At the back of the book is a vocabulary list and a key to the drills and exercises. These enable the book to be used by those studying by themselves. However, it should be said that the book was first written as teaching material, for classroom use. It has been used thus for many years, mainly by Bayarmandakh, and the experience that has given us has led to considerable revision of the texts, exercises and drills, and explanations. We would like to thank all the students who have used the book and provided feedback on it.

Our gratitude goes to Professor Caroline Humphrey, of the Mongolia and Inner Asia Studies Unit, for continued support and encouragement over the years, and especially at the end for bringing us into contact with Curzon. We would also like to thank Mngh at Mongolian TV and radio, and his colleagues, for providing the voices for the tape.

This book is not an exhaustive grammar. It is intended to give the basic building blocks of the Mongolian language so that students will have a secure foundation on which to expand their knowledge of the language through practical use. It is our intention to provide explanations that are clear, concise and understandable, without avoiding the use of some necessary grammatical terms. We hope you enjoy using the book and find it useful.

John Gaunt, Cambridge

THE MONGOLIAN ALPHABET

This is essentially the same as the Cyrillic alphabet used in Russian with the addition of a couple of new letters, although the pronunciation is not exactly the same. The following list gives the alphabet, the transcription used in this book and the approximate values of the letters.

VOWELS AND CONSONANTS

<i>Letter</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Value</i>
Аа	a	As in the exclamation 'ha!'
Бб	b	The first letter of English 'box'
Вв	v	Between English 'v' and 'w'
Гг	g	As English 'k' when final, otherwise see section on vowel harmony
Дд	d	As English 'd'
Ее	ye/yö	As the first sounds of English 'yes' or 'yearn'
Ёё	yö	As the first two letters of 'yomp'
Жж	j	As English 'j' in 'joke'
Зз	z	As the last two letters of 'beds'
Ии	i	As the vowel sound in English 'peak'
Йй	i	Used in diphthongs and long 'ii' sounds
Кк	k	As English 'k'
Лл	l	As English 'l' but with the tongue further back
Мм	m	As English 'm'
Нн	n	When final, as the 'ng' of 'song', otherwise 'n'
Оо	o	As in English 'box'
Өө	ö	Approximately the 'u' in English 'fur', but shore
Пп	p	As English 'p'
Рр	r	Rolled, as in Russian or Italian, or Scottish
Сс	s	As English 's' in 'song'
Тт	t	As the 't' in English 'tool'
Уу	u	As the vowel sound in English 'fall', but short

Уу	ü	As the vowel sound in English 'fool', but short
Фф	f	As English 'f' in 'first'
Хх	h	See section on vowel harmony
Цц	ts	As the last two letters in English 'pots'
Чч	ch	The first and last sounds in English 'church'
Шш	sh	The 'sh' of 'English'
Ьь	'(soft sign)	Adds a hint of an 'i' to the preceding vowel
Ыы	i	Rare. Occurs only on some noun endings and in Russian loan-words. As 'i' in 'in'.
Ъъ	''(hard sign)	Rare. Occurs only in certain verb endings. Will be dealt with then.
Ээ	e	As the 'e' in English 'fell'
Юю	yu/yü	As the English 'yaw' or 'you', but both short
Яя	ya	As in the English 'yah'

LONG VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS

<i>Letter</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Value</i>
аа	aa	This represents the 'a' sound in 'father'
оо	oo	The same sound as in 'box' but held twice as long
уу	uu	Almost exactly as English 'awe'
ээ	ee	The same as 'e' in 'bed' but held twice as long
өө	öö	As the 'u' in English 'fur', but long
үү	üü	Long, as in the English 'pool'
ай	ai	As the vowel sound in English 'pine'
ой	oi	As the 'oy' in English 'boy'
эй	ei	As the 'ay' in English 'hay'
ий	ii	As the 'ee' in English 'ween'

The soft sign 'ь' (') introduces a hint of an 'i' into the vowel and softens the consonant, so that the word 'аль' is between the English 'aisle' and the shortened name 'Al'.

Look at the list of words below, listen to the tape, and compare the pronunciations of the different vowels: short, long, diphthong and with a soft sign.

ав	short vowel	ав	hunt
аав	long vowel	аав	father
айв	diphthong	айв	was afraid

аль	short+soft	al'	which
ааль	long+soft	aal'	manner
хол	short vowel	hol	far
боол	long vowel	bool	slave
мойл	diphthong	moil	wild cherry
толь	short+soft	tol'	mirror
ооль	long+soft	ool'	adze
ул	short vowel	ul	sole (shoe, foot etc.)
уул	long vowel	uul	mountain
буйл	diphthong	buil	gum (of teeth)
уль	short+soft	ul'	howl
ууль	long+soft	uul'	owl
эр	short vowel	er	male
хээр	long vowel	heer	steppe
үнэтэй	diphthong	ünetei	expensive
өр	short vowel	ör	debt
өөр	long vowel	öör	other
үл	short vowel	ül	not
үүл	long vowel	үүл	cloud
үйл	diphthong	üil	act

You will see that not all combinations are represented. This is because Mongolian never combines the letters э, ө or ү with the soft sign, and never combines the letter ө with the diphthong-forming й.

The character 'н' (n/ng) represents the English 'n' except when final (e.g. 'сонин'—'soning') or when it precedes the letters 'x' or 'r', then it represents the 'ng' in English 'song': 'цонх'='tsongh'. It is also pronounced 'ng' sometimes when it precedes consonants. This will be shown in the transliteration. In such cases the 'g' is never pronounced separately, unless there are two of them in the transliteration. Where the 'н' is followed by a final vowel this vowel is virtually unpronounced and so is not reproduced in the transcription. One could say that its function was simply to differentiate between a 'n' or a 'ng' sound at the end of the word. Thus 'байна' is transcribed as 'bain' and rhymes with English 'pine'.

Again, listen to the pronunciation of the words below on the tape:

сонин	soning	newspaper
сонгино	songgino	onion
сайн	saing	good

байнга	baingga	always
байна	baina	be, is, are

Stress in Mongolian is always on the first syllable, regardless of the length of the second or subsequent syllables.

CHAPTER ONE

TEXT

Cyrillic

Сайн байна уу? Би багш. Би англи хүн. Энэ хүн миний найз. Тэр бас англи хүн. Тэр оюутан. Тэр сайн оюутан. Тэр монгол хэл сурна.

Энэ манай байр. Энэ миний өрөө. Миний өрөө том, дулаахан, цэвэрхэн. Миний өрөөний хана шар. Тэр цонх байна. Гадаа том мод байна. Тэр мод ногоон байна. Миний машин бас байна. Миний машин хар, бас жижиг. Тэр жижиг хар машин миний машин.

Өнөөдөр би сайхан ном авна. Өнөө орой энэ номыг уншина. Маргааш би шинэ кино үзнэ. Тэр кино сайхан англи кино.

Roman script

Saim-bainuu? Bi bagsh. Bi anggli хүнг. En хүнг минii найз. Ter bas anggli хүнг. Ter оyuutang. Ter saing оyuutang. Ter monggol hel suran.

En manai bair. En minii öрөө. Minii öрөө том, dulaahang, tseverheng. Minii öрөөnii han shar. Ter tsongh bain. Gadaa том mod bain. Ter mod ногоong bain. Minii mashin bas bain. Minii mashin har, bas jijig. Ter xar, jijig mashin minii mashin.

Öнөөдөр bi saihang ном avan. Öнөө oroi en nomig ungshin. Margaash bi shin kino үzen. Ter kino saihang anggli kino.

VOCABULARY

сайн	saing	good, well
бай-(байх)	baih	to be
сайн байна уу	saim-bainuu	how are you
би	bi	I
багш	bagsh	teacher
анг и	anggli	England, English
хүн	hüng	person
энэ	en	this
тэр	ter	a) he, she, it; b) that
миний	minii	my
манай	manai	our

Modern mongolian 2

найз	naiz	friend
бас	bas	also, as well, too
оюутан	oyuutang	student
монгол	monggol	Mongolia, Mongol
хэл	hel	a) language; b) tongue
сур-(сурах)	surah	to study, to learn
байр	bair	apartment
өрөө(-н)	öröö(-n)	room
том	tom	big, large
дулаахан	dulaahang	warm
цэвэрхэн	tseverheng	clean, tidy
хана	han	wall
шар	shar	yellow
цонх	tsongh	window
гадаа	gadaa	outside
мод	mod	tree
ногоон	nogoong	green
машин	mashin	car
хар	har	black
жижиг	jijig	small
өнөөдөр	önöödör	today
сайхан	saihang	beautiful, nice
ном	nom	book
ав-(авах)	avah	a) to take; b) to buy
өнөө	önöö	this
орой	oroi	evening
өнөө орой	önöö oroi	tonight
унши-(унших)	ungshih	to read
маргааш	margaash	tomorrow
шинэ	shin	new
кино	kino	film, cinema
үзэ-(үзэх)	üzeh	to see

GRAMMAR**1) Vowel harmony**

Looking at the text and the vocabulary you may notice that Mongolian words contain vowels of either one of two groups. The rule which governs this is called vowel harmony and applies to all words except recent foreign loan words. The two groups are a, o and y (a, o and u—called back or “male” vowels); and э, ө and ү (e, ö and ü—called front or “female” vowels). The “i” sounds (и and й) are neutral, as are the soft sign (ь) and hard sign (ъ) and can appear in any word. “ы” is only used in certain endings on certain back vowel words.

Apart from recent loan words, any word cannot contain vowels from both front and back groups. The ending on a verb or noun must be in harmony with those in the word itself. This may sound complicated but is not, and in fact makes the inflection of any one word much easier to formulate than in many languages. The following table gives possibilities for the vowel content of a word and the vowels in the inflection:

group	vowels in word	vowels in ending
back	a	a
	o	o
	y	a
front	э	э
	ө	ө
	ү	э
neutral	и	э

Basically the vowel harmony affects only the the vowels, but there are two consonants in the alphabet where the pronunciation is changed by the vowel harmony. These are the “r” and “x”. All other consonants remain unaffected. The pronunciation of these letters changes in the following way. In back vowel words, the “x” is pronounced in the back of the throat and has a very guttural sound, rather like the “ch” in Scottish “loch”. In front vowel words, the “x” is pronounced more at the front of the throat, at the back of the mouth, and is not so abrasive. The “r” in back vowel words is also in the back of the throat and guttural, sharper than the “x”. The “r” in front vowel words is more like the English “g”. A final “r”, in either front or back vowel words, is pronounced almost as English “g” or “k”. In back vowel words with a “r” followed by a final vowel, this vowel is virtually unpronounced and serves only to gutturalise the sound of the “r”. A back vowel word with a “r” followed by an “и” or a soft sign (ь) has this “r” pronounced as for front vowel words. Listen to the tape and compare the pronunciations of the following words:

бара	back r	baga	small
бах	back x	bah	toad

агъ	г+soft sign	ag'	prince
бахъ	х+soft sign	bah'	pliers
тэг	front г	teg	zero
бэх	front х	beh	ink
чанга	н+back г	changga	firm, tight
анх	н+back х	angh	first
анги	н+-ggi	anggi	classroom
мэнгэ	н+front г	mengge	spot, mole
энх	н+front х	engh	peace

2) The present/future tense of verbs

The principle of vowel harmony is shown in the inflection of verbs to form what in Mongolian covers the present and future tenses.

Verbs come in two parts: a stem and an ending. Thus бай/х—to be; сур/ах—to study; үзэ/х—to see. After the stroke is the ending, in this case the infinitive or dictionary form, before it the stem, to which tense endings are added. Note that the infinitive ending usually consists of a vowel and a “х”. Which vowel it is to be depends on the vowels in the stem. Some verbs have infinitive endings in “-их”, such as “унших”—to read.

You will see from the vocabulary list that verbs are given twice, with the stem followed by a hyphen and with the full form in brackets below. There is some debate between scholars as to which is a correct “infinitive”. In the vocabulary lists in this book both will be given, to be as correct as possible and to make things easier for the learner who may be used to seeing French or German verbs given in dictionaries in their full infinitive form.

The ending for the present/future tense consists of “-на⁴”. The figure 4 shows that this vowel can change four times, according to the vowel harmony. Depending on the vowels in the stem, the ending could either be -на, -но, -нэ or -нө—four possibilities. Thus бай**на**—is, are; сур**на**—study, studies; үз**нэ**—see, sees; өмөс**нө**—wear, wears. There is no difference between the endings for the first, second or third persons (I, you, he etc.), nor yet for singular or plural (I, we etc.). Thus “би үзнэ” is “I see”; “тэр үзнэ” is “he sees”.

This ending also covers the future tense denoted in English by the word “will”, so that “би үзнэ” is both “I see” and “I will see”.

The final vowel is virtually unpronounced and disappears entirely when followed by another vowel, so that “сайн байна уу” is pronounced “saimbainuu”.

EXAMPLES:

Би монгол хэл сур**на**.

I **study/will** study Mongolian.

Тэр кино үз**нэ**.

He **sees/will** see a film.

Тэр ном уншина.

He **reads/will** read a book.

3) The nominative and accusative cases

Like many languages, Mongolian expresses ideas such as by, from, at and so forth by adding an ending or an inflection to the end of the noun. These endings are called cases and Mongolian has seven of them. The most important cases in any language are called the nominative and accusative, for they denote the subject and object of a sentence. In the sentence “I read a book”, the word “I” is the subject and therefore goes into the nominative case, the word “book” is the object and therefore goes into the accusative.

In Mongolian the nominative is uninflected and is the form of the noun as found in a dictionary, the form as given in the vocabulary lists, the stem to which other endings are added. The accusative requires the addition of certain endings. The accusative endings are as follows:

- a) -ыг for back vowel words;
- b) -ийг for front vowel words and back vowel words ending in ж, ч, ш, г, soft sign (ь) and и;
- c) -г for all words ending in long vowels or diphthongs.

Words ending in a single vowel drop this vowel when the ending is added, except foreign loan words. A vowel is sometimes dropped where consonants appear alternately.

EXAMPLES:

<i>nominative</i>	<i>accusative</i>
a) хана	ханыг
оюутан	оюутныг
ном	номыг
b) хүн	хүнийг
анги	ангийг
c) кино	киног
орой	оройг

The accusative of the personal pronouns are somewhat irregular. Those we have met so far are as follows:

би (I)	намайг (me)
та (you) (polite)	таныг (you)
чи (you) (familiar)	чамайг (you)
тэр (he, she, it)	түүнийг (him, her, it)

The accusative can be and often is omitted from the object noun. Thus “би кино үзнэ” and “би киног үзнэ” are both legitimate. Personal pronouns and proper names are always put into the accusative. The accusative is often not added if the object indefinite or if it is general, and it is used usually to specify something definite. Thus “тэр нөгөө номыг уншина”—“he reads the book”; and “тэр ном уншина”—“he reads a book” or “he reads books”.

Where there is a list of nouns which are objects of the same verb, only the final one needs to go into the accusative. This will be the same with all cases.

EXAMPLES IN SENTENCES:

Би бас монгол хэл сурна.

I too study Mongolian.

Тэр миний номыг авна.

She will buy my book.

Би нөгөө англи киног үзнэ.

I will see **the** English film.

4) Adjectives and adverbs

Adjectives do not inflect, whatever the case of the noun they qualify. In the sentence “сайн оюутан сайн кино үзнэ”—“the good student sees a good film”, both subject and object have the same adjective and in exactly the same form.

Adjectives can be used as adverbs simply by placing them before the relevant verb, thus “сайн оюутан сайн сурна”—“the good student studies well”.

5) Word order and omission

The subject is usually the first idea in a Mongolian sentence, the verb usually the last. The object and such ideas as the manner in which something is done usually come between.

When the subject is “тэр”, meaning “it”, this can often be omitted, so that “тэр ногоон хана байна” and “ногоон хана байна” both mean “it is a green wall”. In fact, if the subject is understood from the context within which people are writing or talking, the “it” can always be omitted. We have often left the subject out of the examples in this book. The “байна” can also be omitted, so that “би багш байна” and “би багш” can both mean “I am a teacher”.

Inverting the positions of the noun and adjective can change the meaning of the sentence, so that “тэр хана ногоон (байна)” is “that wall is green”, and “(тэр) ногоон хана (байна)” is “that is a green wall”.

DRILLS

i) Put the verbs in the infinitive into the present/future tense:

EXAMPLE:

сурах—би сурна	to study—I study
авах—	to take
унших—	to read
үзэх—	to see
өмсөх—	to put on
олох—	to find

ii) Put the nominative nouns into the accusative in the following sentences where necessary.

EXAMPLE:

ном—Би энэ номыг уншина.	book—I will read this book.
хэл—	language—I study Mongolian language.
кино—	film—I watch a film.
ор—	bed—He will buy a big bed.
ус—	water—My friend will find the water.
өмд—	trousers—he wears black trousers.

iii) Make two sentences with the same adjective and noun in each, in different order to change the meaning:

EXAMPLE:

хана, ногоон	wall, green
a) Тэр хана ногоон байна.	a) That wall is green.
b) Тэр ногоон хана байна.	b) That is a green wall.
машин, хар	car, black
a)	
b)	
англи хүн, том	Englishman, big
a)	
b)	
ном, сайхан	book, beautiful
a)	
b)	

жимс, ногоон

fruit, green

a)

b)

EXERCISES

a) Translate from English into Mongolian:

1. Today I shall wear my black trousers.
2. Tomorrow I shall buy (some) fruit.
3. My bed is big.
4. He is a good student.
5. She learns Mongolian well.
6. Tonight I shall see an English film.
7. This is a good book.
8. This book is good.
9. She is a nice (=good) person.
10. My classroom is warm.

b) Translate from Mongolian into English:

1. Энэ ном сайн.
2. Энэ сайн ном байна.
3. Өнөөдөр би хар өмд өмөснө.
4. Миний машин том.
5. Ногоон жимс муу.
6. Монгол ус сайхан байна.
7. Тэр муу оюутан байна.
8. Энэ анги дулаахан.
9. Тэр оюутан муу.
10. Өнөөдөр сайхан өдөр байна.

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

өмөс-(өмсөх)	ömsöh	to wear, put on
оло-(олох)	oloh	to find
ор	or	bed
ус	us	water
жимс	jims	fruit
өмд	ömd	trousers
муу	muu	bad
өдөр	ödör	day
нөгөө	nögöö	(here) that
анги	anggi	classroom

CHAPTER TWO

TEXT

Cyrillic

Баатарын авгай Дулмаа. Дулмаагийн нөхөр Баатар. Дулмаа Баатар хоёр малчин. Тэдний гэр их том, цагаан гэр байна. Баатар мал маллаж байна. Дулмаа гэрийн ажил хийж байна. Гэрийн ажил их байна. Дулмаа гэр цэвэрлэж байна.

Баатар гэрийн ажил хийхгүй байна. Тэр улсын мал маллаж байна. Баатар морь унаж байна.

Дулмаа одоо хоол идэж байна. Тэр хонины мах иднэ, гахайн мах идэхгүй.

Comprehension

- Дулмаа юу хийж байна вэ?
- Тэр гэрийн ажил хийж байна.
- Баатар юу хийж байна вэ?
- Тэр мал маллаж байна.
- Баатар хэний малыг маллаж байна вэ?
- Тэр улсын мал маллаж байна.
- Дулмаа хоол идэж байна уу?
- Тийм, хоол идэж байна.
- Ямар хоол идэж байна вэ?
- Мах идэж байна.
- Тэр юуны мах идэхгүй байна вэ?
- Гахайн мах идэхгүй байна.
- Баатар өнөө орой хоол идэх үү, үгүй юу?
- Иднэ.

Roman script

Baatring avgai Dulmaa. Dulmaagiing nöhör Baatar. Dulmaa Baatar xoyor malching. Tednii ger ih tom, tsagaang ger bain. Baatar mal malalj bain. Dulmaa geriing ajil xiiij bain. Geriing ajil ih bain. Dulmaa ger tsevrelj bain.

Baatar geriing ajil hiihgüi bain. Ter ulsing mal malalj bain. Baatar mor' unaj bain.

Dulmaa odoo xool idej bain Honinii mah iden, gahaing mah idexgüi.

- Dulmaa yuu hiiij bain ve?
- Ter geriing ajil hiiij bain.
- Baatar yu hiiij bain ve?
- Ter mal malalj bain.
- Baatar henii malig malalj bain ve?

- Ter ulsing mal malalj bain.
- Dulmaa hool idej bainuu?
- Tiim, hool idej bain.
- Yamar hool idej bain ve?
- Mah idej bain.
- Dulmaa yuuni mah idehgüi bain ve?
- Gahaing mah idehgüi bain.
- Baatar önöö oroi hool idhüü, ügüi yü?
- Iden.

Comprehension

Та багш уу?	Ta bagshuu?	Are you a teacher?
Тийм (би багш).	Tiim (bi bagsh).	Yes, I am (a teacher).
Та эмч үү?	Ta emchüü?	Are you a doctor?
Үгүй, би эмч биш, би оюутан	Ügüi, bi emch bish, bi oyutang.	No, I am not a doctor; I am a student.
Цэрмаа ажилчин уу?	Tsermaa ajilchnuu?	Is Tsermaa a worker?
Үгүй, тэр малчин.	Ügüi, ter malching.	No, she is a herder.
Энэ ширээ байна.	Ene shiree bain.	This is a table.
Тэр бас ширээ юу?	Ter bas shiree yüü?	Is that a table too?
Үгүй, тэр сандал байна.	Ügüi, ter sangdal bain.	No, it is a chair.
Тэр хэн бэ?	Ter heng be?	Who is he/she?
Энэ хэн бэ?	En heng be?	Who is this?
Дорж байна.	Dorj bain.	It is Dorj.
Энэ юу вэ?	En yuu ve?	What is this?
(Энэ) ном (байна).	(En) nom (bain).	(This is) a book.
Энэ ном уу?	En nomuu?	Is this a book?
Тийм, энэ ном.	Tiim, ene nom.	Yes, it is a book.
Энэ самбар уу?	En sambruu?	Is this a blackboard?
Үгүй, самбар биш, хана.	Ügüi, sambar bish, han.	No, it isn't, it is a wall.
Тэр харандаа юу?	Ter harangdaa yuu?	Is that a pencil?
Үгүй, үзэг.	Ügüi, üzeg.	No, it isn't, it is a pen.
Энэ хоёр миний ном.	En xoyor minii nom.	These are both my books.
Дулмаа Дорж хоёр найз.	Dulmaa, Dorj xoyor naiz.	Dulmaa and Dorj are friends.
Даваа, Мягмар, Лхагва гурав малчин.	Davaa, Myagmar, Lhavag gurav malching.	Davaa, Myagmar and Lhagva are herders.

VOCABULARY**Text**

авгай	avgai	wife
нөхөр	nöhör	a) husband; b) comrade
малчин	malching	herder, herdsman
тэд	ted	they
гэр	ger	a) "ger", yurt; b) home
их	ih	much; many; great; very
том	tom	big, large
цагаан	tsagaang	white
мал	mal	livestock
малла-(маллах)	mallah	to herd
ажил	ajil	work
хий-(хийх)	hiih	to do
цэвэрлэ-(цэвэрлэх)	tseverleh	to clean
улс морь(-ин)	uls mor'(-ing)	country, state horse
уна-(унах)	unax	to ride
бичи-(бичих)	bichih	to write
одоо	odoo	now
хоол	hool	food, meal
идэ-(идэх)	ideh	to eat
хонь(-ин)	hon'(-ing)	sheep
мах(-ан)	mah(-ang)	meat
юу(-н)	yuu(-ng)	what
хэн	heng	who
ямар	yamar	what kind of
гахай	gahai	pig
тиим	tiim	yes
үгүй	ügüi	no

Comprehension

эмч	emch	doctor
ажилчин	ajilching	worker

ширээ(-н)	shiree(-ng)	table
сандал	sandal	chair
самбар	sambar	blackboard
харандаа	harandaa	pencil
үзэг	üzeg	pen
хоёр	hoyor	two
гурав (гурван)	gurav(gurvang)	three

GRAMMAR

1) N-stem nouns

If you look at the vocabulary list you will see that there are some nouns which are followed by a vowel and an “n” (н) or just “n” in brackets, such as мах(-ан). Such nouns are called n-stem nouns because the “n” comes into the stem for certain cases. Words ending in long or short vowels simply add an “n” such as ширээ(-н)=ширээн (table). Words ending in consonants add a vowel and an “n”, to separate it from the final consonant, thus мах(-ан)=махан. Nouns ending in a soft sign (ь) drop this soft sign and add -ин, thus морь(-ин)=морин.

Some of the vocabulary we met in the last chapter are n-stem nouns as well. These are хэл(-эн), ор(-он), ус(-ан), жимс(-эн), and кино(-н). Like many foreign nouns, кино is an n-stem.

These nouns do not add the “n” in all cases. In the accusative, for example, they behave like any other noun: ширээ-ширээг; мах-махыг; морь-морийг. The genitive, below, is the first case influenced by this, which the Mongols call the “secret n”.

2) Genitive case

The genitive case is also known as the possessive case and is used to translate the idea of “of” or “s” in English. Thus оюутны ажил is “the student’s work”, Баатарын морь is “Baatar’s horse”. Genitive endings are as follows:

- a) -н for all words ending in a diphthong or long -ий.
- b) -ы for back vowel words ending in -н, including “n” stems.
-ий for front vowel words ending in -н, including “n” stems.
- c) -ийн for front vowel words ending in short vowels and consonants except -н; and for back vowel words ending in -ж, -ч, -ш, -г, -ь, (soft sign) and -и. A short vowel will be dropped on adding this ending.
-ын for all other back vowel words ending with short vowels or other consonants except -н.

- d) - for front or back vowel words ending in long vowels.
гийн

	noun	genitive	meaning
a)	орой	оройн	evening's
	гахай	гахайн	pig's
b)	оюутан	оюутны	student's
	ширээ	ширээний	table's
	хонь	хонины	sheep's
c)	гэр	гэрийн	yurt's, home's
	багш	багшийн	teacher's
	анги	ангийн	classroom's
	улс	улсын	country's, state's
d)	дүү	дүүгийн	(younger) brother's/sister's
	Цэрмаа	Цэрмаагийн	Tsermaa's

In Mongolian the genitive case has several uses. The first and most important is to indicate the idea of possession, e.g. багшийн ном—the teacher's book; оюутны ажил—the student's work; Баатарын мал—Baatar's livestock; хэний найз?—whose friend? and so on.

Another important use of the genitive for what are called attributives (adjectives preceding nouns), as in the following examples: гэрийн ажил—housework; улсын мал—state livestock; жимсний ус—fruit juice (*lit.* fruit's water).

EXAMPLES IN SENTENCES:

Баатар Цэрмаагийн номыг уншиж байна.

Baatar is reading Tsermaa's book.

Долгор хэний морийг унаж байна вэ?

Whose horse is Dolgor riding?

Баатарын нохой Дулмаагийн хоолыг идэж байна.

Baatar's dog is eating Dulmaa's food.

Баатар улсын мал маллаж байна.

Baatar is herding the **state** livestock.

Долгор гэрийн ажил хийж байна.

Dolgor is doing the **housework**.

The genitive forms of the pronouns are as follows:

би	миний	my
та	таны	your
чи	чиний	your
тэр	түүний, тэрний	his/her/its

3) Present-continuous tense

Note the following: Долгор гэрийн ажил хийж байна. This sentence uses the present participle of the verb хийх—to do, and translates in English as “Dolgor **is doing** the housework”. This facility is used almost as often in Mongolian as it is in English.

The present participle is formed by adding -ж, -ч or -аж⁴ to the verb stem. Exactly which it will be depends on the verb stem. The possibilities are as follows:

- a) -ж for stems ending in long vowel, short vowel and -л.
- b) -ч for stems ending in final consonants.
- c) -иж for stems ending in a short -и or -ж, -ч, -ш.

As regards a) and b), you cannot tell from the modern Cyrillic spelling of the verb whether it ends in a final vowel or a consonant. A look at the hyphenated form of the verb in the vocabulary list will tell you where the stem ends. Where there is a short vowel before the hyphen, this is dropped when the present participle is added. See the following table:

<i>verb</i>	<i>stem</i>	<i>participle</i>	<i>meaning</i>
олох	ол-	ол ж	finding
явах	ява-	яв ж	going
авах	ав-	ав ч	taking
унших	унши-	унши ж	reading
бичих	бичи-	бичи ж	writing
өмсөх	өмөс-	өмөс ч	wearing

Using the present participle with the present/future tense of the verb байх “to be” forms the present continuous tense, shown in English by the suffix “-ing” on the verb. Note the following examples in sentences:

Тэр монгол хэл сур ч байна.	He is studying Mongolian.
Би морь уна ж байна.	I am riding a horse.
Та монгол дээл өмөс ч байна.	You are wearing a Mongol deel.
Долгор кино үзэ ж байна.	Dolgor is watching a film.

This tense is used in colloquial Mongolian much as it is in English, to describe an ongoing action. The present/future tense is very rarely used in such a situation and is kept for the future. Compare the following examples:

Баатар энэ номыг унши ж байна.	Baatar is reading this book.
Баатар энэ номыг маргааш уншина.	Baatar will read this book tomorrow.
Долгор мах идэ ж байна.	Dolgor is eating some meat.
Долгор мах иднэ.	Dolgor will eat some meat.

Note that in a declarative sentence the байна can be omitted, in a present continuous tense it cannot be. For example:

Энэ кино сайн (байна).

This film (is) good.

Би мах идэж байна.

I **am** eating meat.

4) Questions

There are two kinds of questions in Mongolian, distinguished by different question markers.

a) A basic question, without a question word. This kind of question is demarcated by the particle уу/үү, depending on the vowel harmony of the last word in the question. For example:

Энэ ном уу?

Is this a book?

Энэ ном сайн уу?

Is this book good?

Цэрмаа эмч үү?

Is Tsermaa a doctor?

Where the final word ends in a long vowel or diphthong, the variant юу is used:

Энэ ширээ юу?

Is this a table?

Өнөө орой юу?

This evening?

Where the question involves a verb in the present/future tense, the infinitive ending is usually used instead (in the Halh dialect), except for the verb to be, which is in the present form байна:

Хоол идэх үү?

Will you have something to eat?

Багш байна уу?

Is the teacher there?

Та ном уншиж байна уу?

Are you reading a book?

Note also сайн байна уу?—how are you?

b) Questions with a question word, such as who, what and so on take the question particle бэ/вэ. The harder бэ is used after words ending in -в, -м and -н only. The vowel does not change according to the harmony. For example:

Ямар мах сайхан бэ?

What (kind of) meat is nice?

Хэн явах вэ?

Who will go?

Та юу идэж байна вэ?

What are you eating?

Та юу идэх вэ?

What will you eat?

It is possible to have both markers in one question, as in the following:

Та юу идэх вэ, мах уу?

What will you eat, some meat?

5) Negatives

Negatives are formed in Mongolian in several ways.

а) биш. This is the negative of the verb байх—to be and means is/are not. It is used as the negative of a declarative sentence in the following way:

Би эмч **биш**, багш.

I'm **not** a doctor, I am a teacher.

Энэ ширээ ногоон **биш**.

This table is **not** green.

б) -гүй. This suffix is added to the verb байх and other verbs in other situations. Where the positive was present/future, it is added to the infinitive ending. For example:

Тэр явна, би явахгүй.

He will go, I **won't**.

Би хоол идэхгүй.

I **shan't** have anything to eat.

In the present continuous tense, it is added to the verb in the infinitive, not to the байх, which follows:

Тэр одоо мал маллахгүй байна.

He **is not** now herding the livestock.

Би гэрийн ажил хийхгүй байна.

I **am not** doing the housework.

Compare the following:

Баатар хоол идэхгүй байна.

Baatar **is not** eating.

Баатар хоол идэхгүй.

Baatar **will not** eat.

с) үгүй. This corresponds to the English “no”.

Тэр хоол идэж байна уу?

Is he eating?

Үгүй, тэр идэхгүй байна.

No, he is not.

DRILLS

i) Make short sentences with the following words involving the genitive:

EXAMPLE:

би, Баатар, ном, унших

I; Baatar; book; read

-Би Баатарын номыг уншина.

I shall read Baatar's book.

тэр, Дулмаа, нохой, авах

he; Dulmaa; dog; take

миний дүү, улс, мал, маллах

my brother; state; livestock; herd

—

нохой, Баатар, хоол, идэх

dog; Baatar; food; eat

—

оюутан, ажил, сайн

student; work; good

—

ii) Give the present participle of the following verbs:

EXAMPLE:

ав- (take)=авч(taking)

сур- (study)=

үзэ- (see)=

ол- (find)=

цэвэрлэ- (clean)=

уна- (ride)=

ява- (go)=

унши- (read)=

өмөс- (wear)=

хий- (do)=

малла- (herd)=

идэ- (eat)=

бичи- (write)=

iii) In the following sentences replace the English verb in brackets with the Mongolian in the present continuous tense:

EXAMPLE:

Дулмаа гэрийн ажил (do) = Дулмаа гэрийн ажил хийж байна.

a) Нохой мах (eat) =

b) Оюутан монгол хэл (study) =

c) Тэр сайхан ном (write) =

d) Малчин морь (ride) =

e) Багш хар өмд (wear) =

iv) Change the following present/future tense sentences into present continuous and translate both into English:

EXAMPLE:

Би хонины мах иднэ. = Би хонины мах идэж байна.

I shall eat mutton. = I am eating mutton.

a) Миний дүү жимс иднэ. =

b) Та юу хийх вэ? =

c) Та ямар ном унших вэ? =

d) Даваа морь унана. =

v) Put the following statements into interrogative (question) form:

EXAMPLE:

Тэр морь унаж байна. = Тэр морь унаж байна уу?

= Хэн морь унаж байна вэ?

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| a) Би маргааш хоол хийнэ. | = |
| b) Баатар мал маллаж байна. | = |
| c) Багш том ном бичиж байна. | = |
| d) Оюутан англи хэл сурч байна. | = |
| | = |

vi) Put the following positive statements into the negative:

EXAMPLE:

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|
| Лхагва морь сайн унаж байна. | = | Лхагва морь сайн унахгүй байна. |
| a) Багш сайн ном бичиж байна. | = | |
| b) Энэ оюутан их сайн сурч байна. | = | |
| c) Маргааш би гэрийн ажил хийнэ. | = | |
| d) Би өнөөдөр монгол кино үзнэ. | = | |

EXERCISES

a) Translate from Mongolian into English:

1. Та өнөөдөр гэрийн ажил хийх үү?
2. Та мал маллах уу?
3. Та монгол хэл сайн сурч байна уу?
4. Та оюутан уу, багш уу?
5. Та хонины мах идэх үү, гахайн мах идэх үү?
6. Та кино үзэх үү, үгүй юу?
7. Танай дүү жимс идэх үү?
8. Таны нохой том уу?
9. Таны гэр цэвэрхэн үү?
10. Та англи ном уншиж байна уу?

b) Translate into Mongolian:

1. My dog is very big.
2. Tsermaa's yurt is very clean.
3. Myagmar is riding a horse, Baatar is not (riding).
4. Mongolia is a big country.
5. Whose dog is this?
6. Will you clean the yurt?
7. Will you have something to eat?
8. Will you not see a film this evening?
9. Dulmaa is Baatar's wife, Baatar is her husband.
10. She will not read this book.

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

нохой

nohoi

dog

CHAPTER THREE

TEXT

Cyrillic

Манай аав ээж хоёр хотын байрандаа сууж байна. Би өнөөдөр тэнд очив. Аав, ээждээ "Сайн байна уу?" гэж хэлэв. Миний аав өрөөндөө сууж байв. Би бас тэнд сууж сонин уншив. Миний ээж хоол хийж, гал тогооны өрөөнд байв. Ээж бууз хийж байв. Би бууз хийж чадахгүй. Миний ах, эгч, охин дүү гурав бас ирэв. Аав тэд нарт "Сайн байна уу? Сонин сайхан юу байна?" гэж хэлэв. Ээж хоол авчрав. Бид ширээнд сууж, хоолоо идэж, цай ууж, их юм ярив.

Roman script

Manai aav, eej хoуor hoting bairандаа сууж байна. Би өнөөдөр tend ochiv. Aav, eejdee "Saimbainuu?" gej helev. Minii aav öröongdöö сууж baiv. Bi bas tengd сууж, soning ungshiv. Minii eej hool xij, gal togooni öröönd baiv. Eej buuz hiiv. Bi buuz xij chadahgüi. Minii ah, egch, ohing дүү gurav bas irev. Aav ted nart "Saimbainuu, soning saihang yuu bain?" gej helev. Eej hool avchrav. Bid shireengd сууж, hooloo idej, tsai ууж, ih yum yariv.

Comprehension

Миний хүү сургуульд явав.	Minii hüü surguul'd yavav.	My son went to school.
Аав гэрт байна.	Aav gert bain.	Father is in the yurt.
Аав гэртээ байна.	Aav gertee bain.	Father is at home.
Олон оюутан их сургуульд сурч байна.	Olong oyutangi ih surguul'd surch bain.	Many students are studying at the University.
Танд хэдэн ном байна вэ?	Tand hedeng nom bain ve?	How many books do you have?
Миний хүү өнөөдөр сургуульд оров.	Minii xüü önöödör surguul'd orov.	My son entered school today.
Аав сая гэрт оров.	Aav saya gert orov.	Father has just entered the yurt.
Аав сая гэргээ ирэв.	Aav saya gertee irev.	Father has just come home.
Би ээждээ жимс өгөв.	Bi eejdee jims ögöv.	I gave my mother the fruit.
Манай аав ээж хоёр гэрт сууж	Manai aav, eej hovor gert сууж	My parents live in a yurt.

байна.	bain.	
Бид энэ долоо хоногт хоёр ном уншив.	Bid en doloo honogt hoyor nom ungshiv.	We read two books this week.
Миний хүү энд сууж байна.	Minii hüü end suuj bain.	My son is sitting here.
Тэр ном уншиж сууж байна.	Ter nom ungshij suuj bain.	He is sitting and reading.
Миний хүү уншиж, би бичив.	Minii hüü ungshij, bi bichiv.	My son read and I wrote.
Явж болно.	Yavj bolon.	(You) may go.
Тамхи татаж болохгүй.	Tamih tataj bolohgüi.	No smoking.

VOCABULARY

Text

аав	aav	father
ээж	eej	mother
хот	hot	city, town
байр(-ан)	bair(-ang)	building, flat; hostel
суу-(сууж)	suuh	to sit, live
очи-(очих)	ochih	to go to, visit
хэлэ-(хэлэх)	heleh	to say, speak
гэ-(гэх)	geh	to say
тэнд	tend	there
сонин	soning	a. newspaper; b. interesting
гал	gal	fire
тогоо(-н)	togoo(-n)	pan
гал тогооны өрөө	gal togooni öröö	kitchen
бууз(-ан)	buuz(-an)	buuz, a kind of stuffed dumpling
чада-(чадах)	chadah	can, to be able
ирэ-(ирэх)	ireh	to come
ах	ah	elder brother
эгч	egch	elder sister
охин	ohing	daughter, girl
охин дүү	ohing düü	younger sister
сонин сайхан юу байна?	soning saihang yuu bain?	what's new?
хүүхэд	hüühed	child

авчира-(авчирах)	avchrah	to bring
бнд(-эн)	bid(-eng)	we
цай	tsai	tea
уу-(уух)	uuh	to drink
их	ih	very; a lot
юм(-ан)	yum(-ang)	thing
ярь-(ярих)	yarih	to speak, talk

Comprehension

хүү	hüü	son
сургууль	surguul'	school
их сургууль	ih surguul'	university
олон	olong	many
хэд(-эн)	hed(-eng)	how many
өг-(өгөх)	ögöh	to give
сая	saya	just now
оро-(орох)	oroh	to enter
долоо	doloo	seven
хоног	honog	day (24 hrs)
долоо хоног	doloo honog	week
бичи-(бичих)	bichih	to write
тамхи(-н)	tamih(-in)	tobacco
тата-(татах)	tatah	a. to draw; b. to smoke
боло-(болох)	boloh	may, possible

GRAMMAR

1) Dative case

This case translates the idea of to, at, in, for and so on. Also known as the locative case, it deals with the location of something, or with something moving to something else. The dative has three possible endings, -д, -ад⁴ and -т. They are used in the following ways:

- a) -д for words ending in any vowel; for words ending in -м, -н, or -л; after an -р followed by a short vowel not spelt in the cyrillic; after a soft sign or the short -н; after the final -н of an n-stem noun; and after most consonants.

- b) -ад⁴ for words ending in -д; -з; -ц; -с; -т; and -х. Words ending in -ш or -ч take the dative ending -ид.
- c) -т for stems ending in the consonants -р; -г; -с; (where the -с is preceded by a vowel).

See the following table:

<i>noun</i>	<i>dative</i>	<i>meaning</i>
a) хана	хананд	on the wall
хэн	хэнд	to whom
ширээ	ширээнд	at the table
Англи	Англид	in England
b) ах	ахад	to the brother
багш	багшид	to the teacher
c) самбар	самбарт	on the blackboard

The dative forms of the personal pronouns we have met so far are as follows:

<i>nominitive</i>	<i>dative</i>	<i>meaning</i>
би	надад	to me
та (polite)	танд	to you
чи (familiar)	чамд	to you
тэр	түүнд	to him, her, it
бид	бидэнд	to us
тэд	тэдэнд	to them

The dative case has several uses. These are as follows:

- i) Describing location: Тэр ангид байна. =He is **in** the classroom. Би гэрт ном уншиж байв. =I was reading the book **in** the yurt. Аав шнрээнд суув. =Father sat **at** the table.
- ii) Describing motion to something or somewhere: Тэр Монголд явав. =He has gone **to** Mongolia. Оюутан ангид оров. =The student went **into** the classroom.
- iii) With the verb “to give”: Би нохойд мах өгөв. =I gave the dog meat *or* I gave meat **to** the dog.
- iv) To translate the verb “to have”, which does not exist in Mongolian: **Надад** үзэг, харандаа байна. =I **have** a pen and pencil. Баатарт олон үхэр байна. =Baatar **has** a lot of cattle.

EXAMPLES IN SENTENCES:

Монголд мал их байна.	In Mongolia there is a lot of livestock <i>OR</i> Mongolia has a lot of livestock.
Надад ажил их байна.	I have a lot of work to do.
Баатар Дулмаа хоёр гэрл сууж байна.	Baatar and Dulmaa are living in a yurt.
Би байранд сууж байна.	I am living in a flat.
Миний охин их сургуульд оров.	My daughter entered university.
Миний хүү ажилд явав.	My son went to work.
Тэр хүн малчинд хонь өгөв.	He gave the herdsman a sheep.

Note the idiomatic use of юу—what—in the dative. Юунд can mean “why”, or “what for”, as in the following:

Та юунд явах вэ?	What are you going for?
------------------	-------------------------

2) The past tense -ав⁴

This ending when added to a verb stem describes actions completed in the past. It is therefore called a past tense. Mongolian has several past tenses, which will be discussed later.

This tense has two possible endings, -ав⁴ and -в. They are used in the following way:

- a) -в when the verb stem (see vocabulary lists) ends in a short or a long vowel.
- b) -ав⁴ when the stem ends in a consonant. The vowel will change four times according to the vowel harmony.

See the following table:

<i>verb stem</i>	<i>past tense</i>	<i>meaning</i>
a) унши-	уншив	read
ява-	явав	went
суу-	суув	sat
b) сур-	сурав	studied
өг-	өгөв	gave

This form of the past tense is actually quite rarely used in the colloquial Halh dialect.

EXAMPLES IN SENTENCES:

Би сургуульд явав.	I went to school.
Тэр гэрт оров.	He went into the yurt.

3) The present participle and other verbs

a) In the English sentence “**I am sitting**” the word “sitting” is a present participle, “am” (from the verb “to be”), the second verb, is an auxiliary. Mongolian and English, unlike say French or German, have this facility in common, so that the above sentence translates easily into the Mongolian “би сууж байна”. Please note that the auxiliary can be in any tense you like—сууж байна—**am** sitting; сууж байв—**was** sitting.

Some other Mongolian verbs when used as auxiliaries also take the present participle, for example чадах—can, be able, and болох—can, may. Look at the following examples:

Би бууз хийж **чадна**.

I **can** make buuz.

Тэр морь сайн унаж **чадахгүй**.

He **can't** ride well.

(Та) явж **болно**.

(You) **may** go.

Үүнийг **авч болох уу?**

Can I take this one?

Note also the difference between these two words. Both can mean “can”, but чадах deals more with ability, болох more with being allowed to and permission.

b) By using two verbs, one in the present participle and the other in the appropriate tense, one can describe two actions taking place simultaneously. Again, this is a feature Mongolian has in common with English.

Note the following examples:

Тэр сонин уншиж суув.

He sat reading a newspaper.

It is possible to have two objects, one for each verb:

Би ном уншиж, хоол идэв.

I read a book and had my dinner.

A whole string of ideas can be put together in this way:

Би ширээнд сууж, цай ууж, хоол идэж,
сонин уншив.

I sat at the table drinking tea, eating my supper and
reading the paper.

The two verbs can have different subjects, to show that two people are doing things at the same time:

Багш уншиж, оюутан бичиж байна.

The teacher is reading and the student is writing.

Some colloquial expressions use the present participle and another verb. See the following examples:

Тэр бидэнд хоол хийж өгнө.

He will make food for us.

Тэр морь унаж явав.

He rode (*lit.* he riding went).

4) The reflexive

The reflexive in Mongolian is an ending added to a noun to denote possession, or perhaps a level of intimacy with the thing concerned. It basically consists of a double vowel added to the case ending or the noun itself, and is thus written -aa⁴. Where the noun ends in a soft sign (ь) or a short i (и) the reflexive becomes -иа⁴. The reflexive can be added to any of the cases we have so far met, and to all those we shall have in the future.

See the following tables:

	<i>noun (+case+reflexive)</i>	<i>meaning</i>
nom	ном	book
acc	номоо	“one’s own” book
gen	номыхоо	of “one’s own” book
dat	номдоо	to “one’s own” book
nom	ширээ	table
acc	ширээгээ	“one’s own” table
gen	ширээнийхээ	of “one’s own” table
dat	ширээндээ	to “one’s own” table
nom	хонь	sheep
acc	хонио	“one’s own” sheep
gen	хониныхоо	of “one’s own” sheep
dat	хониндоо	to “one’s own” sheep
nom	сургууль	school
acc	сургуулиа	“one’s own” school
gen	сургуулийнхаа	of “one’s own” school
dat	сургуульдаа	to “one’s own” school

Note that the genitive+reflexive requires a “x” between the two, and that a noun ending in a long vowel requires a “r” to separate the two. Note also that in the accusative+reflexive, the accusative ending is not used.

See the following examples in sentences:

Би номоо уншиж байна.	I am reading my book.
Тэр хонио үзэв.	He saw his (own) sheep.
Тэр гэртээ харив.	He went home (<i>lit.</i> to his home).
Би ахынхаа номыг уншина.	I shall read my brother’s book.

It would be perfectly possible to have two reflexives in the one sentence:

Малчин ахдаа хонио өгөв. The herdsman gave his sheep to his elder brother.

The reflexive is often used in talking of countries, where the subject is a native of that country:

Тэр Монголдоо буцна.

He will go back to [his own] Mongolia.

Би Англидаа байна.

I am in [my] England.

The reflexive is often used with the nominative to address people, in the way of a vocative or “calling” case, in which case it is written as separate from the word it qualifies:

Дорж **оо**, чи юу хийж байна вэ?

Dorj, what are you doing?

Ээж **ээ**, хоол байна уу?

Mum, is there any food?

DRILLS

i) Using the following groups of nouns and the verb өгөх—to give, make short sentences using the dative:

EXAMPLE:

би, нохой, мах

Би нохойд мах өгөв.

I gave meat to the dog.

a) тэр, ах, ном

b) багш, оюутан, ажил

c) Дорж би, ширээ

d) малчин, ах, хонь

ii) Using the dative, put the following groups of words into sentences meaning “to have” with байх—to be:

EXAMPLE:

би, ном

Надад ном байна.

I have a book.

a) оюутан, дэвтэр

b) багш, ном

c) малчин, мал

d) та, ажил

iii) Use the dative and a verb to describe location:

EXAMPLE:

анги, ширээ, байх

Ангид ширээ байна.

There is a table in the classroom.

a) оюутан, сургууль, сурах

b) мал, тал, байх

- с) би, гэр, хоол, идэх
- д) багш, анги, суух
- е) цай, аяга, байх
- ф) сонин, сонин юм, байх

iv) Use the dative and the verb to describe motion to or into:

EXAMPLE:

оюутан, сургууль, явах
Оюутан сургуульдаа явна.

The student will go to school.

- а) Миний аав, Англи, явах
- б) Дорж, Дулмаа хоёр, гэр орох
- с) би, кино, явах
- д) багш, анги, орох

v) Change the following sentences from present/future to past and translate both:

EXAMPLE:

Би гэртээ байна.

I shall stay at home.

Би гэртээ байв.

I was at home.

- а) Би өнөөдөр кино үзнэ.
- б) Баатар хоолоо иднэ.
- с) Манай дүү гэрийн ажил хийнэ.
- д) Дулмаа гэргээ харина.

vi) Change the following sentences from present continuous to past and translate both:

EXAMPLE:

Баатар мал маллаж байна.

Baatar is herding livestock.

Баатар мал маллаж байв.

Baatar was herding livestock.

- а) Нохой мах идэж байна.
- б) Ээж хоол хийж байна.
- с) Дорж хоолоо идэж, цайгаа ууж байна.
- д) Аав сониноо уншиж байна.

vii) Make sentences using more than one verb:

EXAMPLE:

би, ном, унших, эхлэх

I, book, read, begin

Би ном уншиж эхлэв.

I began to read/began reading a book.

- а) би, аяга авах, цай уух
- б) бид, кино үзэх, цай уух
- с) ээж, хоол хийх, юм ярих

- d) Баатар, тамхи татах, хоолоо хийх
- e) оюутан, монгол хэл, сурах, ном, унших
- f) дүү бид хоёр, гэргээ харих, их ярих

viii) Of the following sentences, make two different sentences by adding the reflexive to different words, then translate both:

EXAMPLE:

Малчин нохойд хоол өгөв.

Малчин нохойдоо хоол өгөв.

The herdsman gave food to his dog.

Малчин нохойд хоолоо өгөв.

The herdsman gave his food to the dog.

- a) Баатар морь унаж, үхэр хариулав.
- b) Хүү ном авч, сургуульд явав.
- c) Би хоол гэрт иднэ.
- d) Ээж гал тогооны өрөөнд хоол хийв.

EXERCISES

a) Answer the following questions:

1. Та тамхи татах уу?
2. Та ном уншиж байна уу?
3. Та ямар ном уншиж байна вэ?
4. Танай гэр хаана байна вэ?
5. Танд олон ном байна уу?
6. Танд хэдэн ном байна вэ?
7. Танд ямар ном байна вэ?
8. Чамд ах дүү (brothers and sisters) байна уу?
9. Чамд үзэг байна уу?
10. Чамд ногоон харандаа байна уу?

b) Translate from Mongolian:

1. Та тамхи татах уу?
2. Би тамхи татахгүй.
3. Багш аа, та юу хийж байна вэ?
4. Би ангидаа сууж, ном уншиж байна.
5. Ээж ээ, аав юу хийж байна вэ?
6. Кино үзэж байна.
7. Миний хүү, чи одоо сургуульдаа явах уу?
8. Үгүй, өнөөдөр би сургуульд явахгүй!
9. Баатар хэний малыг хариулж байна вэ?
10. Ахынхаа малыг хариулж байна.

c) Translate from English into Mongolian:

1. Will you have a cigarette?

2. Brother, what is father doing?
3. Is your elder sister a student?
4. No, she is not a student, she is a teacher.
5. The teacher is sitting in his classroom, reading his book.
6. Whose son are you?
7. I am Baatar's son Dorj.
8. My father is a herdsman, he is now riding his horse.
9. My son, will you wear your black trousers?
10. No, I shall wear my blue (xөх) trousers.

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

тал	tal	steppe
аяга(-н)	ayaga(-n)	cup, bowl
эхлэ-(эхлэх)	ehleh	to begin, start
харь-(харих)	harih	to return, go home
буца-(буцах)	butsah	to return, go back
хариул-(хариулах)	hariulah	to tend, look after (of herds)
хаана	xaan	where
хөх	höh	blue
үхэр	üher	cow, cattle

CHAPTER FOUR

TEXT

Цэнд малчин. Тэр мал малладаг. Цэнд, Долгор хоёр гэрт суудаг. Цэнд өглөө гэрээсээ гардаг. Тэгээд морио унаж адуундаа явдаг. Цэнд өглөөний цайгаа гэргээ уудаг. Харин өдрийн хоолоо бэлчээрт иддэг. Тэр бэлчээрээс гэртээ орой буцаж ирдэг. Тэгээд оройн хоолоо иддэг.

Долгор залуу. Цэндээс тав дүү. Цэнд Долгороос тав ах. Долгор, Цэнд хоёр модон аяганд хоолоо иддэг. Тэд нар бас жаахан цай уудаг. Зуны эхнээс тэр хоёр заримдаа айраг уудаг.

Зун ихэнх малчид их мах иддэггүй, зөвхөн айраг, тараг, сүү уудаг. Айраг их амттай, биед их сайн.

Comprehension

Би ном уншдаг.	I read books.
Миний дүү ном уншдаг.	My younger brother reads books.
Тэд нар ном уншдаг.	They read books.
Чи ном уншдаг уу?	Do you read books?
Унцдаг.	Yes, I do.
Чи монгол хэл сурдаг уу?	Do you study Mongolian?
Тийм.	Yes, I do.
Цэнд сургуулиас ирэв.	Tsend came from school.
Манай ах өнөөдөр хотоос ирэв.	My elder brother came from town today.
Бид намраас англи хэл сурч эхлэв.	We started learning English in the autumn.
Миний хүүгээс нэг захиа ирэв.	A letter came from my son.
Чи надаас залуу.	You are younger than me.
Би чамаас өндөр.	I am taller than you.
Та нараас хэн монгол хэл мэдэх вэ?	Which of you knows Mongolian?
Би номын сангаас хэдэн ном авав.	I took several books from the library.
Үүнийг багшаас асуу!	Ask the teacher about this.
Яв!	Go!
Суу!	Sit (down)!
Унш!	Read!

Бич!	Write!
Орчуул!	Translate!
Битгий яв!	Don't go!
Бүү орчуул!	Don't translate!
Та яв!	Would you please go.
Та суу!	Please sit down.
Та унш!	Please read.
Та бич!	Please write.

VOCABULARY**Text**

тэгээд	tegeed	then; and then
гар-(гарах)	garah	to go out, leave
адуу(-н)	aduu(-n)	horse(s), (male or female)
өглөө(-н)	öglöö(-n)	morning
өглөөний цай	öglöönii tsai	breakfast
харин	haring	but
өдөр	ödör	day
өдрийн хоол	ödriing hool	lunch
харин	haring	but
бэлчээр	belcheer	pasture
тав	tav	five
дүү	düü	(here) years younger
ах	ah	(here) years older
мод(-он)	modo(-n)	wood; wooden
жаахан	jaahang	a little
зун	zung	summer
эх(-эн)	eh(-en)	begining, start
ихэнх	ihengh	most
зөвхөн	zövhöng	only
айраг(-ан)	airag(-an)	airag (kumiss, fermented mare's milk)
тараг	tarag	yogurt

амт	amt	taste
амттай	amtatai	tasty
зарим	zarim	some
заримдаа	zarimdaa	sometimes
бие	biye	body; health

Comprehension

намар	namar	autumn
нэг	neg	one
захиа(-н)	zahia(-n)	letter
залуу	zaluu	young; young man
өндөр	öngdör	tall
мэдэ-(мэдэх)	medeh	to know
сан(-г)	sang(-g)	store, storehouse
номын сан	noming sang	library
хэдэн	hedeng	several
асуу-(асуух)	asuuh	to ask
орчуул-(орчуулах)	orchuulah	to translate
битгий	bitgii	don't!
бүү	büü	don't!

GRAMMAR**1) The habitual present -даг⁴**

This ending, added to the stem of a verb, translates the idea of somebody doing something habitually, regularly, or repeatedly. In the sentence “би монгол хэл сурдаг” the construction is used to show that learning Mongolian is something the subject does regularly, perhaps in the way of an occupation, rather than just today or over the next few weeks. It can also be used to describe someone’s habits, as in the sentence “би ном уншдаг”, which translates as “I read books”. The sentence could also be translated as “I usually read books” or “I often read books”, but the “usually” and “often”, implied by the use of this ending are often omitted from the translation.

The vowel in this ending changes four times according to the vowel harmony.

EXAMPLES:

Би нохойд хоол өгдөг.

I (usually) feed the dog.

Би номын сангаас ном авдаг.	I (often) take books from the library.
Манай найз гэрт суудаг.	My friend lives in a yurt.
Манай аав заримдаа кино үздэг.	My father sometimes sees films.
Та ямар ажил хийдэг вэ?	What kind of work do you do?
Чи хоол хийдэг үү?	Do you cook?

2) G-stem nouns

There is a minority of nouns which, in the cyrillic end in a final -н (-n) but add a -г (-g) in certain case endings. One example of these nouns is *can*—a store. The accusative is formed by adding a pronounced “r” to the end of the word, in the genitive they take the ending -гийн. Dative is as normal for words ending in “-н”, therefore a “-д”. See the table below:

<i>nominative</i>	<i>accusative</i>	<i>genitive</i>	<i>dative</i>
сая	санг	сангийн	санд

3) The ablative case -аас⁴

This case is used to translate the English word “from”, although it does have some other special uses as well. The double vowel changes four times according to the vowel harmony and takes the following forms:

- a) -аас for words ending in consonants or unpronounced final vowels.
- b) -иас for words ending in the soft sign (ь) or a short final “и”.
- c) -наас for n-stem nouns.
- d) -гаас for g-stem nouns and nouns ending in a long final vowel. In the case of the latter, the “r” is to separate the stem from the ending.

<i>noun</i>	<i>ablative</i>	<i>meaning</i>
a) гал	галаас	from the fire
хэн	хэнээс	who from
гэр	гэрээс	from the yurt/home
b) сургууль	сургуулиас	from the school
Англи	Англиас	from England
c) ширээ	ширээнээс	from the table
d) номын сая	номын сангаас	from the library

дүү

дүүгээс

from the brother

EXAMPLES IN SENTENCES:

Би энэ номыг багшаас авна.

I shall get this book **from** the teacher.

Цэнд сургуулиасаа ирэв.

Tsend has come **from** school.

The ablative can be used to describe “from” a place:

Тэр хотоос ирнэ.

He will come **from** town.

It can be used to describe “from” a time:

Бид намраас сурч эхлэв.

We started studying in (=from) the autumn.

It can be used to describe “from” a person:

Миний хүүгээс захиа ирэв.

A letter came **from** my son.

It can be used to describe comparison, translating the English “than”:

Чи надаас өндөр.

You are taller **than** me.

Би чамаас залуу.

I am younger **than** you.

It can be used to describe a part of a whole, translating the English “of”:

Та нараас хэн монгол хэл мэдэх вэ?

Which **of** (lit. **from**) you knows Mongolian?

It is also used with the verb асуух—“to ask”, and айх—“to fear”:

Би үүнийг багшаас
асууна.I shall ask the teacher about this. (lit. I shall ask this [acc.] **from** the teacher.)Би нохойноос айдаггүй. I am not afraid **of** dogs.

The reflexive can be added to the ablative:

Би гэрээсээ ирэв.

I came **from** home.

Би багшаасаа айдаг.

I am afraid of my teacher.

The ablative forms of the pronouns are as follows:

надаас

nadaas

from me

танаас

tanaas

from you

чамаас

chamaas

from you

түүнээс/тэрнээс

tüünees/ternees

from him/her/it

4) The imperative

This form of the verb is used for the giving of requests and commands. It consists of the stem of the verb only, dropping the -ax⁴ infinitive ending:

Надад ог!	Give it to me!
Хоолоо ид!	Eat your dinner!

Adding the “ra” in front of the order makes it a more polite request:

Та ор!	Come in!
Та суу!	Please sit down.

Doubling the imperative up also makes it more polite:

Ор, ор!	Please come in!
---------	------------------------

Negative commands are made by putting бүү or битгий (don't) in front:

Бүү яв!	Don't ай!
Тамхи бүү тат!	No smoking!
Битгий яв!	Don't ай!

The бүү is usually used for more formal requests, and is less used in colloquial language.

5) Some n-stem noun as adjectives

Some n-stem nouns, often the words for materials, can be made adjectives simply by adding the -н(-n) to the end of the word:

торго—торгон	silk—silk(-en)
торгон дээд	a silk deel
мөнгө—мөнгөн	silver—silver
мөнгөн аяга	silver bowl
мод—модон	wood—wooden
модон сандал	a wooden chair

6) Plurals

Plurals of nouns are problematic in Mongolian. They are in fact quite rarely used, as in the sentence би ном уншдаг, I read books, where in Mongolian the word is singular but translates the idea of the plural “books”. Where plurals are used, they take the form of a suffix added to the noun. There are several of these:

a)	-ууд ²	used generally on nouns and on some nationalities:
	найз—найз ууд	friend—friends
	хүүхэд—хүүхд үүд	child—children
	орос—орос ууд	Russian—Russians
b)	-чууд ²	used on certain other nationalities:
	монгол—монгол чууд	Mongol—Mongols
	англи—англи чууд	English—English people
c)	-д	used on nouns describing an “occupation”:
	малчин—малчид	herdsman—herds men
	ажилчин—ажилчид	worker—workers
d)	нар	is only ever used of people, for certain, usually respectable, occupations:
	багш—багш нар	teacher—teachers
	эмч—эмч нар	doctor—doctors
e)	-С	is added as a plural ending to some words:
	залуу—залуус	young—young people
	уул—уулс	mountain—mountains

Note the curious plural of хүн, which also falls into this group:

хүн—хүмүүс	person— people
------------	-----------------------

7) Personal pronouns

These are as follows:

<i>singular</i>		<i>plural</i>	
би	I	бид (нар)	we
та	you (polite)	та нар	you
чи	you (familiar)	та нар	you
тэр	he, she	тэд (нар)	they

Full declensions of these personal pronouns will be given in the table in Chapter 7.

Note that та is used when addressing someone unfamiliar or in a position of respect, it is like the German *Sie* or the French *vous*. It is used for example for teachers or parents as well as strangers. The plural is та нар.

The чи is used when addressing someone with whom one is intimate, such as brothers and sisters, friends and so on. There is no specific plural form of this, the form та нар is used instead.

In the case of бид and тэд, the нар can be added or omitted, this is optional.

DRILLS

i) Put the following groups of words into sentences using the habitual present -даг⁴:

EXAMPLE:

би, эрт, босох

I, get up, early

Би эрт босдог.

I get up early.

- a) миний аав, цай, уух
- b) Баатар, сургууль, явахгүй
- c) сайн оюутан, сайн сурах
- d) малчид, морь, унах

ii) Change the following form present/future to habitual and translate both:

EXAMPLE:

Би кинонд явна.

I shall go to the cinema.

Би кинонд явдаг.

I (often) go to the cinema.

- a) Цэрмаа орой кино үзиз.
- b) Манай багш ном орчуулна.
- c) Би жаахан цай ууна.
- d) Миний ээж бууз хийнэ.

iii) In the following sentences put the noun in brackets into the ablative to describe “from”:

EXAMPLE:

Тэр (хот) ирэв.

Тэр хотоос ирэв.

He came from town.

- a) Миний хүү (сургууль) ирнэ.
- b) Би номоо (дэлгүүр) авдаг.
- c) Би өнөөдөр (гэр) гарахгүй.
- d) Ээж гал тогооны (өрөө) хоол авчирч байна.
- e) Чи (би) үзэг ав.
- f) (Тэр) битгий асуу. Тэр мэдэхгүй.
- g) Чи энэ номыг номын (сан) авах уу?
- h) Үүнийг монгол (хэл) орчуул!

iv) Using the ablative, make two sentences of comparison with the following groups of words:

EXAMPLE:

Баатар, Цэнд, өндөр.

Баатар Цэндээс өндөр.

Baatar is taller than Tsend.

Цэнд Баатараас өндөр.

Tsend is taller than Baatar.

a) айраг, цай, сайхан.

b) зун, өвөл, сайхан.

c) мөнгө, мод, сайн.

d) мах, гурил, амттай.

v) Put the following infinitive verbs into the imperative to make an order, then cancel that order using бүү or битгий:

EXAMPLE:

босох

Бос!

Get up!

Битгий бос!

Don't get up!

a) явах

b) өрөөгөө цэвэрлэх

c) цайгаа уух

d) тамхи татах

EXERCISES

a) Answer the following questions:

1. Чи тамхи татдаг уу, үгүй юү?
2. Чи өглөө эрт босдог уу?
3. Чи номын санд очдог уу?
4. Тэндээс олон ном авдаг уу?
5. Чи кино үздэг үү?
6. Чи ямар ажил хийдэг вэ?
7. Чи айраг уудаг уу?
8. Чи морь унадаг уу?
9. Чи гэрт суудаг уу, байшинд суудаг уу?
10. Чи сургуульд явдаг уу?

b) Translate from Mongolian into English:

1. Би өглөө их эрт босдог.
2. Чи тамхи татдаг уу?
3. Татдаг. Харин одоо надад; байхгүй байна.
4. Надад байна. Чи надаас ав.
5. Та ямар ажил хийдэг вэ?
6. Би багш. Та ямар ажил хийдэг вэ?
7. Ажил хийдэггүй, би оюутан. Монгол хэл сурдаг.

8. Тийм үү? Би монгол хэлний багш.

9. Та зун юу хийдэг вэ?

10. Зун би амардаг.

c) Translate from English into Mongolian:

1. I don't (usually) get up early.

2. What kind of work do you do?

3. I am a teacher of Mongolian language.

4. I leave home very early.

5. I shall not get up today.

6. Tsend is older than me. He is my elder brother.

7. Tsermaa is younger than me. She is my younger sister.

8. He does a lot of work at home.

9. He does not come back from school early.

10. I am old (хөгшин). I rest a lot.

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

эрт	ert	early
бос-(босох)	bosoh	to get up, rise
дэлгүүр	delgüür	shop
өвөл	övöl	winter
гурил	guril	flour, dough
байшин	baishing	house
амар-(амрах)	amrah	to rest
мөнгө(-н)	mönggö(-n)	silver; money
очи-(очих)	ochih	to go, visit
хөгшин	högshing	old

CHAPTER FIVE

TEXT

- Миний хүү, чн өнөөдөр хэдэн цагт сургуульдаа явах вэ?
— Найман цагт. Ээж ээ, би өчигдөр Баатартай ууланд гарсан.
— Тийм үү? Баатарын бие сайн уу?
— Баатарын бие сайн, харин дүү нь өвчтэй гэнэ.
— Ээ, хөөрхий, яасан гэнэ вэ?
— Ханиад хүрсэн гэнэ.
— Та хоёр ямар ууланд гарсан бэ? Ууланд юу юу үзсэн бэ?
— Богд ууланд гарсан. Тэгээд үнэг, буга үзсэн.
— Тийм үү? Чи айсан уу?
— Үгүй, үнэг, буганаас айдаггүй, би!
— Яасан сайн хүү вэ! За, одоо сургуульдаа яв, миний хүү!
— За, баяртай, ээж ээ!
— Баяртай, миний хүү!

Comprehension

Би энэ номыг уншсан.	I (have) read this book.
Ах бид хоёр ээждээ захиа бичсэн.	My brother and I (lit. brother we two) wrote a letter to our mother.
Би Мягмарт хоёр ном өгсөн.	I gave two books to Myagmar.
Би өнөөдөр долоон цагт боссон.	I got up at 7 o'clock today.
Би ахтайгаа ууланд гарсан.	I went to the mountains with my elder brother.
Би олон номтой.	I have many books.
Дорж хоёр ах, нэг эгчтэй.	Dorj has two elder brothers and one elder sister.
Зурагтай ном.	An illustrated book.
Үнэтэй хувцас.	Expensive clothes.
Цастай уул.	A snowy mountain.
Энд өвөл нь хүнтэй, зун нь халуун.	The winter is cold and the summer is hot here.
Ах нь явсан.	His brother went.

VOCABULARY

Text

цаг	tsag	time, hour
өчигдөр	öchigdör	yesterday
уул(-ан)	uul(-an)	mountain, hill
гар-(гарах)	garah	a. to go out b. (here) to climb
өвдө-(өвдөх)	övdöh	to get ill, to hurt
ээ	ee	(interjection) oh
хөөрхий	höörhii	poor, poor thing
өвчин	övching	sickness
өвчтэй	övchtei	ill
ханиад	haniad	a cold, flu
хүр-(хүрэх)	hüreh	to reach
ханиад хүрэх	haniad hüreh	to catch cold
үнэг(-эн)	üneg(-en)	fox
буга	buga	deer
богд	bogd	holy
Богд уул	Bogd uul	name of a mountain
яасан	yaasang	how (lit 'done what')
яасан сайн	yaasang saing	how nice/good
за	za	(interjection) O.K etc.
баяртай	bayartai	goodbye

Comprehension

долоо(-н)	doloo(-n)	seven
зураг	zurag	picture
зурагтай	zuragtai	illustrated
үнэ	ün	price
үнэтэй	üntei	expensive, pricey
хувцас(-ан)	huvtsas(-an)	clothes
цас(-ан)	tsas(-an)	snow
өвөл	övöl	winter
хүйтэн	hüiteng	cold

халуун

haluung

hot

GRAMMAR**1) The past tense -сан⁴**

This past tense refers to a time perhaps further back than the -ав⁴ past we met earlier. This distinction is not, however, complete. The -ав⁴ past could be called “perfect”, the -сан⁴ “imperfect”. The fact is that in the colloquial language this past tense is used far more than the -ав⁴ form. Remember also that there are no perfect parallels between two languages as different as Mongolian and English. The terms “perfect” and “imperfect” are used only as a convenient means of distinguishing the two, they do not actually represent the tenses thus referred to in western European grammatical systems. There are no complications regarding the ending of the verb stem, the suffix is -сан and the vowel changes four times according to the vowel harmony:

<i>verb</i>	<i>past tense</i>	<i>meaning</i>
авах	авсан	took
олох	олсон	found
сурах	сурсан	studied
эхлэх	эхлэсэн	began
өгөх	өгсөн	gave
үзэх	үзсэн	saw
бичих	бичсэн	wrote
унших	уншсан	read

EXAMPLES IN SENTENCES:

Би тэнд очсон.	I went there.
Тэр тэнд байсан.	He has been there. He was there.
Би багш байсан.	I was (used to be) a teacher.
Тэр монгол ном уншсан.	He read a Mongolian book.

This past tense on the verb байх—to be—can be used with the present participle, much like English, to form a past continuous:

Би сургуульдаа явж байсан.	I was going to school.
Би сонин уншиж байсан.	I was reading a newspaper.

It can also be used with the habitual -даг⁴ to express the English “used to”:

Би долоон цагт босдог байсан.	I used to get up at seven.
Би ном их уншдаг байсан, одоо уншдаггүй.	I used to read much, now I don't.

By comparison with the -сан⁴, the -ав⁴ (perfect) past is almost never used in the colloquial language. Questions can be put in either form, but should be answered only in the imperfect form. When the question is in the perfect, this is usually polite and often delivered by an older person:

Та сайн явав уу?	Did you have a good journey (lit. did you go well)?
Их сайн явсан.	I had a very good journey (lit. I went very well).

Note that явав уу would be transliterated as **yavav uu** but its pronunciation sounds more like **yavbuu**.

The negative of this case is formed by adding -гүй:

Чиний иайэ ирсэн үү?	Did your friend come?
Үгүй, ирсэнгүй.	No, she did not.

In the past continuous, the main verb can be negated:

Чи үүнийг өчигдөр мэдэж байсан уу?	Did you know about it yesterday?
Би мэдэхгүй байсан.	No, I did not.

2) The comitative case

This case is used basically to translate the English “with”. It takes the suffix -тай³, regardless of the end of the noun:

<i>noun</i>	<i>comitative</i>	<i>meaning</i>
аав	аав тай	with father
охин	охин той	with a daughter
ээж	ээж тэй	with mother
мөнгө	мөнгө тэй	with money
хүн	хүн тэй	with someone
жимс	жимс тэй	with fruit

Note that the comitative of мөнгө is мөнгөтэй, not мөнгөтөй. This is because the diphthong “өй” is held not to exist in Mongolian, which is why the suffix is given as тай³. There is, however, a tendency to pronounce it as such.

The comitative can be used for straight “with”, where it is often accompanied by the words “хамт” or “цуг”, meaning together:

Би багш тай ирсэн.	I came with the teacher.
---------------------------	---------------------------------

Баатар Дорж**той** цуг явсан.

Baatar went **with** Dorj.

Би чам**тай** хамт явна.

I shall go **with** you.

It can also be used to translate “to have”, denoting possession:

Би гурван ах**тай**.

I **have** three brothers.

Тэр мөнгө**тэй**.

He **has** money.

When translating English “to have” into Mongolian, be careful whether to use the dative or the comitative. Both are valid, but the dative goes on **who** is having, the comitative on **what** is had. You cannot put both in one expression:

Баатар**т** хонь бий.

Baatar **has** some sheep.

Баатар хонь**той**.

Baatar **has** some sheep.

The comitative is used also to make new words, usually adjectives:

өөх; өөх**тэй** мах

fat; fatty meat

зураг; зураг**тай** ном

picture; picture book

үнэ; үнэ**тэй**

эжшөүд эжшөунь учзуиышсу

When used with the reflexive, the comitative takes an intrusive “г”:

Би эгч**тэйгээ** ирсэн.

I came **with my** elder sister.

Би найз**тайгаа** суудаг.

I live **with my** (girl-/boy-) friend.

There is a negative form of the comitative, known to some as the negative case, made by dropping the -тай and adding -гүй:

Би мөнгө**гүй**.

I have **no** money.

Би найз**гүй**.

I have **no** friends.

Note also the idiomatic use of юутай—with what:

Сонин сайхан юутай вэ?

What’s new?

The answer to which is usually “юмгүй”—nothing.

The comitative is also used with the verbs ярих—to talk and уулзах—to meet.

Би Ганболд**той** ярьсан.

I talked **to** Ganbold.

Би түүн**тэй** уулзсан.

I met (lit. met **with**) him.

3) The emphatic

We have already met reflexive, which takes the form of a double vowel added to nouns after their case suffixes. A double vowel (aa⁴) is sometimes added to verbs also, to show emphasis. On verbs, the double is written separately and does not form one word with the verb.

EXAMPLES IN SENTENCES:

Хүйтэн байна аа .	Oh, it is cold.
Чи сургуульдаа явах уу?	Are you going to school?
Явна аа , явна.	Yes, yes.
Үүнийг авч болох уу?	Can I take this?
Болно оо , болно.	Yes, of course.

4) Numbers and time (part 1)

Here are the numbers from one to ten in Mongolian:

нэг(-эн)	neg(-en)	one
хоёр	hoyor	two
гурав(гурван)	gurav(gurvan)	three
дөрөв(дөрвөн)	döröv(dörvön)	four
тав(-ан)	tav(-an)	five
зургаа(-н)	zurgaa(-n)	six
долоо(-н)	doloo(-n)	seven
найм(-ан)	naim(-an)	eight
ес(-өн)	yös(-ön)	nine
арав(арван)	arav(arvan)	ten

Looking at the list above you will see that all but one of the numbers are followed by an “-н” in brackets, like n-stem nouns. When a number comes on its own, it is in its basic form. When it quantifies, or shows the number of, a noun, then it has to have the “-н”. The number **two** is the only exception of this rule, and it is flexible with the number **one**. See the following examples:

Чамд хэдэн харандаа байна вэ?	How many pencils do you have?
Найм.	Eight.
Надад найман харандаа байна.	I have eight pencils.

You can add a case ending straight on to the number in the following way:

Чи хэдэн настай вэ?	How old are you?
Аравтай.	I am ten.
Чи хэдэн хонь авсан бэ?	How many sheep did you buy?
Дөрвийг авсан.	I bought four.

In telling the time, the number, with its “-н”, is used with the word цаг meaning “hour”, but translating as “o’clock”.

нэг цаг	one o’clock
хоёр цаг	two o’clock
гурван цаг	three o’clock
дөрвөн цаг	four o’clock
таван цаг	five o’clock
зургаан цаг	six o’clock
долоон цаг	seven o’clock
найман цаг	eight o’clock
есөн цаг	nine o’clock
арван цаг	ten o’clock
арван нэгэн цаг	eleven o’clock
арван хоёр цаг	twelve o’clock

Case endings can be added to the time in the following way:

найман цаг т	at eight o’clock
долоон цаг аас	from seven o’clock

Telling the time in minutes will be dealt with in the following chapter.

5) The particle нь

This particle is basically a subject marker, for emphasis, to draw attention to it, as in the following:

Өвөл **нь** хүйтэн, зун **нь** халуун. **The** winter is cold, **the** summer is hot.

Originally, this particle was the third person singular (he, she etc.) possessive pronoun, and is still used as such:

Баатар хоолоо идэж, ах **нь** цай уусан. Baatar ate his food and **his** brother drank some tea.

Some further uses of this particle will be discussed in the following chapter.

DRILLS

i) In the following sentences change the verb from the -ав⁴ “perfect” past to the -сан⁴ “imperfect”:

EXAMPLE:

Тэр гэртээ ирэв.

He has come home.

Тэр гэртээ ирсэн.

He came home.

a) Би номын сангаас ном авав.

b) Цэрмаа үхрээ саав.

c) Долгор кцмо узэь.

d) Даваа сүү уув.

e) Баяр ууланд гарав.

ii) Change the following sentences from present continuous to past continuous and translate both:

EXAMPLE:

Баатар морь унаж байна.

Baatar is riding a horse.

Баатар морь унаж байсан.

Baatar was riding a horse.

a) Багш самбарт бичиж байна.

b) Би ном уншихгүй байна.

c) Миний толгой өвдөж байна.

d) Чи хаанаас явж байнаь?

iii) Put the verb in brackets in the following sentences into the past tense using -сан⁴:

EXAMPLE:

Би сургуульдаа (явах).

Би сургуульдаа явсан.

a) Аав аа, та мах (авах) уу?

b) Ээж хоол (хийх).

c) Бид нар кино (үзэх).

d) Мягмар гэртээ (байх).

iv) In the following sentences put the noun in brackets into the comitative meaning “with”:

EXAMPLE:

Мягмар (Баатар) ууланд гарсан.

Мягмар Баатартай ууланд гарсан.

a) Цэнд (Долгор) хамт суудаг.

- b) Чи (би) хоол идэх үү?
- c) Тэр долоон (хүн) ирсэн.
- d) Би (багш) хамт ажиллана.

v) In the following sentences, the dative has been used to translate the idea of the English “to have”. Change them to use the comitative, paying attention to which should be nominative and which comitative:

EXAMPLE:

Надад мөнгө байна.

Би мөнгөтэй.

- a) Баатарт авгай байна.
- b) Ууланд цас байна.
- c) Түүнд нохой байна.
- d) Баярт ах, дүү олон байна.

vi) In the following sentences change “with” to “without”:

EXAMPLES:

Би мөнгөтэй.

Би мөнгөгүй.

- Чи ахтай юу?
- Үгүй, би ахгүй.

- a) Энэ мах их өөхтэй.
- b) Чи олон найзтай юу?
- c) Манай анги том самбартай.
- d) Чи малгайтай явах уу?
- e) Богд уул бугатай.
- f) Би ханиадтай.
- g) Чи мөнгөтэй ирсэн үү?
- h) Та өнөөдөр завтай юу?

vii) Count from one to ten in Mongolian.

viii) In the following sentences, put the figure in brackets into the correct written form:

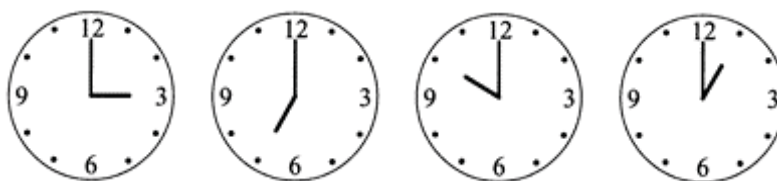
EXAMPLE:

(4) хүн ирсэн.

Дөрвөн хүн ирсэн.

- a) Манай ангид (10) ширээ байна.
- b) Баатар (8) хоньтой.
- c) Би (1) сайн ном авав.
- d) Цэрмаа (5) хүүхэдтэй.

ix) Tell the times on the following clock faces:



x) Draw clock faces and put on hands showing the times below:

- a) арван хоёр цаг
- b) зургаан цаг
- c) нэг(эн) цаг
- d) дөрвөн цаг

EXERCISES

a) Answer the following questions:

1. Та монгол хэл сурдаг уу?
2. Монгол хэл хаана сурдаг вэ?
3. Та ямар улсаас ирсэн бэ?
4. Өвөл нь ямар байдаг вэ?
5. Зун нь ямар байдаг вэ?
6. Та олон малтай юу?
7. Та ах дүүтэй юү?
8. Та ажилтай юу?
9. Та ямар ажилтай вэ?
10. Та авгайтай юу (нөхөртэй юү)?

b) Translate from English:

1. Have you any brothers and sisters?
2. I have no brothers and sisters.
3. What does your father do?
4. He is a teacher, he works in a school.
5. My father is ill.
6. Poor thing. What does he have?
7. He has the flu. The winter is very cold.
8. My brother and I went to the mountains together.
9. What did you see?
10. We saw foxes and deer.

c) Translate from Mongolian:

1. Та ах, дүү олонтой юү?
2. Би нэг ах, нэг эгч, хоёр дүүтэй.
3. Танай ах юу хийдэг вэ?
4. Манай ах малчин, улсын мал малладаг.
5. Өвөл их хүнтэй байна. Би дандаа ханиад хүрдэг.

6. Чи мөнгөтэй юү?
7. Би мөнгөгүй.
8. Өнөөдөр чи юу хийх вэ?
9. Би найзтайгаа ууланд гарна.
10. Би та нартай хамт явж болох уу?

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

өөх(-өн)	ööh(ön)	fat
сүү(-н)	süü(-n)	milk
толгой	tolgoi	head
ажилла-(ажиллах)	ajillah	to work
зав	zav	free time, leisure
саа-(саах)	saah	to milk
нас	nas	age
бий	bee	to be; to exist
уулза-(уугзах)	uulzah	to meet
малгай	malgaa	hat
дандаа	dangdaa	always

CHAPTER SIX

TEXT

(Цэцэгмаа ажил дээрээсээ утасдав. Дорж, Цэцэгмаа хоёр утсаар ярьж байна.)

Д: -Байна уу?

Ц: -Байна, хэн бэ?

Д: -Дорж байна.

Ц: -Би Цэцэгмаа байна. Сайн уу? Сонин сайхан юу байна?

Д: -Юмгүй, чамаар юу байна? Ажил дээрээ байна уу?

Ц: -Тийм ээ. Хөөе, нөгөө миний орхисон ном танайд байна уу?

Д: -Мүүгээн Жогор тавьсан гом уу?

Ц: -Үгүйширэн дээр тавьсан нь.

Д: -Байгаа, байгаа. Чамд хэрэгтэй юү?

Ц: -Одоо хэрэгтэй байна. Надад авчирч өгөхгүй юү?

Д: -За, би ажилдаа очихдоо номыг чинь аваачиж өгнө.

Ц: -За, чамайг ирэхэд би өрөөндөө хүлээж байна. Чи хэдэн цагт ирэх вэ?

Д: -Арав хагаст очно.

Ц: -За, өөр юу байна?

Д: -Өөр юмгүй, баяртай.

Ц: -За, баяртай.

Comprehension

Би Кэмбрижид галт тэргээр ирсэн.

I came to Cambridge by train.

Чи үзгээр бичсэн үү, харандаагаар бичсэн үү?

Did you write in pen or pencil?

Дорж модоор ширээ хийсэн.

Dorj made a table out of wood.

Та нар монголоор ярьдаг уу?

Do/Can you speak Mongolian?

Бид монголоор бага сага ярьдаг.

We (can) speak a little Mongolian.

Хотоор сонин юу байна?

What is the news in town?

Миний ном тэнд байгаа.

My book is over there.

Тэр номоо бичиж байгаа.

He is writing his book.

Англид суугаа Монголын Элчин Сайдын Яам.

The Mongol Embassy in England.

Миний оюутан хичээлдээ ирээгүй.

My student has not come to class.

Миний оюутан хичээлдээ ирсэнгүй.

My student did not come to class.

-Баатар ирсэн үү?

-Did Baatar come?

-Ирээгүй.

-No, he did not.

Би уншаагүй байна.	I am not reading/I have not read it.
Би явахдаа чамд хэлнэ.	When I go I shall tell you.
Тэр гарахдаа дээлээ өмссөн.	When he went he put on his coat.
-Намайг очиход чи байх уу?	-Will you be there when I come?
-Чамайг ирэхэд би өрөөндөө байна.	-When you come I shall be in my room.
Намайг гэрт нь очиход тэр байгаагүй.	When I went to his house he was not in.
Ээжийн чинь санаа одоо их зовж байна.	Your mother is very worried.
-Чи миний цүнхийг үзсэн үү?	-Have you seen my bag?
-Би цүнхийг чинь үзээгүй.	-I have not seen your bag.

VOCABULARY

Text

утас (-ан)	utas(-an)	phone, wire; thread
утасда-(утасдах)	utasdah	to telephone
байна уу	bainuu	hello (on the phone)
юмгүй	yumgüi	nothing
дээр	deer	on, above, over; better
хөөе	hööyö	an interjection, hoy!
минь	min'	my, of mine
нөгөө	nöggöö	that; the other
орхи-(орхих)	orhih	to leave, to abandon
тавь-(тавих)	tavih	to put
шүүгээ(-н)	shüügee(-n)	cupboard
дотор	dotor	in, inside
хэрэгтэй	heregtei	necessary
удахгүй	udahgüi	soon
аваачи-(аваачих)	avaachih	to take
хүлээ-(хүлээх)	hüleeh	to wait (for)
өөр	öör	else, other, different

Comprehension

галт тэрэг(-эн)	galtereg(-en)	train
үзэг	üzeg	pen

харандаа(-н)	harangdaa(-n)	pencil
хот	hot	town
бага	baga	little
бага сага	baga saga	a little
тэнд	tengd	(over) there
элч(-ин)	elch(-in)	messenger, ambassador
сайд	said	minister, official
яам(-ан)	yaam(-an)	office, ministry
элчин сайдын яам	elching saiding	embassy
	yaam	
хичээл	hicheel	class, lesson
саарал	saaral	grey
чинь	chin'	your, of yours
санаа(-н)	sanaa(-n)	thought, idea
зово-(зовох)	zovoh	to suffer
санаа зовох	sanaa zovoh	to worry
цүнх(-эн)	tsüingh(-en)	bag

GRAMMAR

1) Instrumental case

This case, when added to nouns, is used to express ideas which we in English express as “with” or “by means of”. Its usage should not be confused with the comitative which can be used to translate the other meaning of the English “with”. The instrumental is used in the following examples:

Би үзгээр бичсэн.

I wrote **in** pencil *or* I wrote **with** a pencil.

Дорж модоор ширээ хийсэн.

Dorj made a table **out of** wood.

Би мориор ирсэн.

I came **by** horse.

Note that there are many instances in English where the idea is not translated necessarily by the words “by” or “with”, but that is generally the basic idea. There are also several idiomatic uses of the instrumental in Mongolian which we shall come to later.

The different possible endings for the instrumental are as follows:

a) -аар⁴ for nouns ending in consonants and unpronounced final vowels;

- b) - гаар⁴ for nouns ending in pronounced final vowels (foreign loan words), long vowels, diphthongs and the latent -г;
- c) -нар⁴ for nouns ending in the soft sign and short final “н”.

Note that although the latent -g does affect the instrumental ending, the latent -n does not. See the following table:

<i>word</i>	<i>instrumental</i>	<i>meaning</i>
a) автобус	автобусаар	by bus
утас(-ан)	утсаар	by phone
b) англи	англиар	in English
морь(-ин)	мориор	by horse
c) номын сан(-г)	номын сангаар	by means of the library
нохой	нохойгоор	by the dog
ширээ(-н)	ширээгээр	by means of the table.

Note the conventional usage of the instrumental in the following sentences:

Би сургуульдаа автобусаар ирсэн. I came to school **by** bus.

Тэр харандаа гаар бичэн. He wrote **in** pencil *or* He wrote *with* a pencil.

Тэр англиар их сайн ярьдаг. He speaks very good English *or* He speaks (**in**) English very well.

Note also the following idiomatic usage of the instrumental:

Чамаар сонин сайхан юу байна? What's new **with** you?

Хотоор сонин юу байна? What's new **in** town?

Одоо дэлгүүрээр явах уу? Shall we go **to** the shops now?

Чи өдрийн хоолоор юу юу идсэн бэ? What did you have **for** your lunch?

Чамаар сонин юу байна? is a fairly common question after the initial сайн байна уу? and can also be чамд сонин юу байна? (with the dative—what's new to you). The latter is exceedingly rarely used. Similarly, if you want to put the question in a more polite form, either the dative or instrumental of the formal “та” can be used. In expression дэлгүүрээр явах, дэлгүүрээр indicates that more than one shop is likely to be visited. If you were to say “Shall we go into **the** shop”, that would translate as “дэлгүүрт очих уу?”.

The reflexive can be added to the instrumental as in the following example:

Би үзгээрээ бичсэн. I wrote with my (own) pen.

The instrumental forms of the personal pronouns are as follows:

би	надаар
та	танаар
чи	чамаар
энэ	үүгээр
тэр	түүгээр
бид (бид нар)	биднээр (бид нараар)
та нар	та нараар
тэд (тэд нар)	тэднээр (тэд нараар)

2) Postpositions

In English, the words “in”, “on”, “about” and so on tell us something about the word described, whether it be location or subject matter or something else. In English, such words go before the noun and so are called “prepositions”. In Mongolian, they go after, and so are called postpositions. See the following examples:

ширээн дээр	on the table
шүүгээн дотор	in the cupboard
сандаал дор	under the chair

The most important of these postpositions concern the location of objects in relation to others, and either take no case ending or just add the “n” of an “n” stem noun. Other postpositions, for example “тухай—about”, take the genitive with all nouns of all kinds:

Би Монголын тухай ярьсан.	I spoke about Mongolia.
Морины тухай ном.	A book about horses.

The postposition дээр also has some idiomatic uses:

Би энэ номыг монгол дээр орчуулсан.	I translated this book into Mongolian.
Өнөөдрийн сонин дээр байна.	It's in today's newspaper.
Би Дорж дээр очсон.	I went to Dorj's house OR I visited Dorj.

In each of the above examples, the use of дээр is slightly different. In the first, it replaces the instrumental, and the sentence could equally well read

Би энэ номыг монголоор орчуулсан.

In the second it is used where we would perhaps consider using the dative, but in this situation this is not done. We can use дээр for any kind of literature or publication, television programme and so on in a similar way:

Энэ ном дээр байна.	It is in this book.
Энэ зураг дээр би байхгүй.	I'm not in this photograph.

In the final example it is used to describe someone's house. It can be used in this way to describe any kind of regular location of somebody's:

над дээр	at my house; with me (I've got it)
чам дээр	at your house; with you (you've got it)
Дорж дээр	at Dorj's house; with Dorj
Доржийн ажил дээр	at Dorj's work
Өнөө орой би чам дээр очно.	I shall come and see you tonight.
Тэр ажил дээрээ байна.	He is at work.

Note that in the final example the **reflexive** is used on the дээр to show that he is at **his own** work.

Note also that when дээр is used in this way to describe location or to describe a simple "on" or "on top of", it takes no case ending, but the oblique stem of the noun or personal pronoun.

3) Present continuous tense -aa⁴

There is a present continuous tense which takes an ending -aa⁴ which is very little used with most verbs except in very formal speech. It is, however, often used with the verb байх—to be, making байгаа. There is also a shorter equivalent, бий. Whichever one is used in, for example, a question, the same must be used in answer:

Нөгөө ном байгаа юу?	Is that book there?
Байгаа. Хэрэгтэй юү?	Нууь шэ isv Бү нүг иууб шэЮ
Нөгөө ном бий юү?	Is that book there?
Бий. Хэрэгтэй юү?	Нууь шэ isv Бү нүг иууб шэЮ

Where the байгаа is used as an auxiliary in a question, an answer must be given in the same way or with байна:

-Чи ажил хийж байгаа юу?	-Are you working now?
-Хийж байгаа/хийж байна.	-I am working.

In meaning, this suffix is somewhat similar to the -дар⁴ we met in Chapter 4, but deals with more ongoing situations than repeated regular ones.

4) Past tense negative -aary⁴

The negative form of the -aa⁴ above is -aary⁴ but in the negative it has a past tense meaning. In colloquial speech it is often used as an alternative to the negative we have already met, -сангүй⁴:

-Дорж ирсэн үү?	Has Dorj come?
-Ирсэнгүй.	-No, he hasn't.
-Ирээгүй.	-No, he hasn't.
-Чи гэртээ харьсан уу?	-Did you go home?
Үгүй, харнагүй.	-No, I didn't.

Strictly speaking, however, there is a slight difference between the two. The -аарүй⁴ can be said to carry the meaning of “not yet”, whereas the -сангүй⁴ is more of a “did not”. In practice, however, this distinction is often disregarded.

5) "When"

One way of translating the English “when” as a statement into Mongolian is to use the dative case on a verb. Look at the following examples:

Танай ажил дээр очихдоо би номыг чинь аваачна.	When I come to your work I shall bring the book.
Намайг очиход тэр байхгүй байсан.	When I went there he was not in.

Such a sentence can be broken up into two parts. One is called the main clause and the other is called the subordinate clause. The main clause contains the most important information and in Mongolian comes after the “when” verb, whereas in English it can be either before or after. The subordinate clause contains less important information and comes before and includes the “when” verb.

You can see from the above examples that in the first the reflexive is used on the verb очих—to go, which indicates that the subjects of both main and subordinate clauses are one and the same, in this case, “I”. If the subject is the same in both clauses, then it can be omitted either in the first or second part of the whole sentence. In the second example, no reflexive is used, instead the subject of the subordinate clause is in the accusative case. Whatever the tense of the main verb, the subordinate (“when”) verb always goes into the infinitive form. Have a look at the examples below:

Би гэртээ харихдаа сонин авсан.	As I was going home I bought a newspaper.
Тэр дэлгүүрт очихдоо мөнгөтэй байсан.	He had some money when he went into the shop.
Намайг очиход чи байх уу?	Will you be there when I come?
Чамайг ирэхэд би байж байна.	I shall be there when you come.

Where the subject of the subordinate clause is not the subject of the main clause and should therefore go into the accusative, but takes an object of its own, the subordinate subject can go into the nominative as in a normal sentence. Compare the following examples:

<u>Би</u> ном аваачихад чи байх уу?	When I bring the book will you be there?
-------------------------------------	--

Намайг ном аваачихад чи байх уу?

When I bring the book will you be there?

As you can imagine, there are likely to be problems with sentences with two animate subjects, where both verbs can take an object, making it difficult to know which is the main subject and which the subordinate. We shall look later at ways of overcoming these problems.

6) Possessive particles

Look at the following sentences:

Миний аав их сайн хүн.

OR Аав минь их сайн хүн.

My father is a very good man.

Намайг түүний гэрт очиход тэр байгаагүй.

OR Намайг гэрт нь очиход тэр байгаагүй.

When I went to his house he was not there.

Чиний ээжээс захиа ирсэн үү?

OR Ээжээс чинь захиа ирсэн үү?

Has a letter come from your mother?

The минь, чинь and нь used in the above sentences are called possessive particles. They follow the noun they relate to and follow it regardless of whatever case the relevant noun is in. Like the possessive adjectives (миний, чиний, түүний etc.) they mean my, your, his and so on. In the above examples, two equivalents are offered for each of the English meanings. In each pair, the first example, using the possessive adjective, is not incorrect, but it is colloquially better to use the shorter, more convenient possessive particle. Each of the personal pronouns has a possessive particle, which are as follows:

<i>pronoun</i>	<i>poss. adj.</i>	<i>poss. part.</i>	<i>meaning</i>
би	миний	минь	my
чи	чиний	чинь	your
та	таны	тань	your (polite)
тэр	түүний	нь	his, her, its
бид	бидний, манай	маань	our
та нар	та нарын, танай	тань	your (plural)
тэд	тэд нарын, тэдний	нь	their

The third person singular possessive particle, нь, can be used to replace a noun which has been dropped from a sentence. It means “the...one”, and is most frequently used with adjectives and pronouns:

Энд хар, саарал хоёр малгай байна. Аль нь дээр вэ?

Here are a black and a grey hat. Which is better?

-Саарал нь дээр.	The grey one is better.
-Аль нь том бэ?	Which is bigger?
-Энэ нь том.	This one is bigger.

The particle нь replaces the noun, but it never takes a case ending. Where necessary, the case ending is placed on the adjective:

Альнаас нь вэ?	From which of them?
Хэнтэй нь уулзсан бэ?	Which of them did you meet?
Би томд нь дуртай.	I like the big one.

7) Numbers and time (part 2)

In the last chapter we looked at how to tell the time in hours. In this, we shall look at the numbers from 10 to 100, and telling the time in minutes. Here are the numbers from 10 to 100. As you will see, they bare a clear relation to those from one to ten, just as they do in English:

арав (арван)	ten
арван нэг	eleven
арван хоёр	twelve
арван гурав	thirteen
арван дөрөв	fourteen
арван тав	fifteen
арван зургаа	sixteen
арван долоо	seventeen
арван найм	eighteen
арван ес	nineteen
хорь(-ин)	twenty
хорин нэг...	twenty one...
гуч (-ин)	thirty
гучин нэг...	thirty one...
дөч(-ин)	forty
дөчин нэг...	forty one...
тавь(-ин)	fifty
тавин нэг...	fifty one...
жар(-ан)	sixty

дал(-ан)	seventy
ная(-н)	eighty
еп(-эн)	ninety
зуу(-н)	hundred

These numbers behave just like those from one to ten, in that the latent “n” comes in when they are used to enumerate something:

дөчин хүн	forty people
-----------	--------------

Moreover, the “n” comes in also when the number is a compound, that is, has two or more elements:

дөрөв	four
дөрвөн хүн	four people
дөчин дөрөв	forty-four
дөчин дөрвөн хүн	forty-four people
зуун дөчин дөрвөн хүн	a hundred and forty-four people

When telling the time, the number of the hour is given without the “-n”. The minutes are given after. Mongolian has a word for “half”, when telling the time, as in “half past...”, but unlike English, does not have such an expression for “quarter past...”. The clocks below show different times, with the times written in Mongolian below:



дөрөв хагас/дөрөв гуч



эургаа дөч



арав арван тав



долоо гучин тав

Note that one can say either дөрөв гуч (four thirty) or дөрөв хагас (half past four). For the numbers past the half hour, you can either say the number (forty, fifty-five etc.) in full, or use the number less than thirty with “дутуу” (“less”):



арав дөчин тав **OR** арван нэгд арван
тав дутуу байха ten forty-five **OR** a
quarter to eleven



гурав гучин тав **OR** дөрөвт хорин
тав дутуу байха three thirty-five **OR**
twenty-five to four

To say at a certain time the dative is used at the end of the whole expression in the following ways:

-Чи сургуульдаа хэзээ явсан бэ?

When did you go to school?

-Есөн цагт.	At nine o'clock.
-Чи сургуулиасаа хэдэн цагт (хэдэд) ирсэн бэ?	At what time did you come back from school?
-Гурав хагаст.	At half-past three.
-Өдрийн хоолоо хэзээ идсэн бэ?	When did you have your lunch?
-Арван хоёр дөчид.	At twelve-forty.
-Англи хэлний хичээл чинь хэдэд эхлэсэн бэ?	When did your English class start?
-Арван нэгд арав дутуу байхад.	At ten to eleven.

Note that the word "дутуу" must be accompanied by the verb *dgah* in the correct form.

8) Verbs of coming and going

All languages have different verbs for coming and going, which they use in slightly different ways. In English, we speak of “coming here” and “going there”. In Mongolian as in English, the reference point is the speaker. Mongolian has three of these basic “verbs of motion”. They are:

1)	ирэх	to come
2)	явах	to go
3)	очих	to go; visit

What decides which is to be used is the speaker, who will talk of him or herself going or coming back to the present position, or of someone else moving toward or away from his or her own (the speaker's) position. For example:

Би сая ирсэн.	I have just come.
Би удахгүй сургуульдаа явна.	I shall go to school soon.
Дорж эгд ирсэн.	Dorj came here.
Дорж тэнд очсон.	Dorj went there.

What this means is that sometimes where in English we use the verb ‘come’, Mongolian will use ‘go’, for example if talking to someone somewhere else on the phone:

Би одоо очно. I'm on my way **OR** I'm coming.

There are two verbs for “return”, *харих* and *буцах*:

Би гэртээ харина.	I'm going home.
Би Англидаа буцна.	I'm going back to England.

The usage of *ирэх* and *очих* affect the usages of the verbs *авчирх* and *аваачих*, respectively “bring” and “take”, as these are compounds formed from the verb *авах*—to

take, and the two verbs for “come” and “go”. One “brings” things here and “takes” them there:

-Миний нөгөө номыг одоо авчрахгүй юу?

Will you bring my book now?

-Аваачна аа.

Yes, I will.

DRILLS

i) In the following sentences, put the word in brackets into the instrumental case:

EXAMPLE:

Дорж (мод) шнрээ хийсэн.

Дорж модоор ширээ хийсэн.

Dorj made a table out of wood.

- a) Багш (үзэг) бичсэн.
- b) Оюутан (харандаа) бичсэн.
- c) -Чи өдрийн (хоол) юу юу идсэн бэ?
- d) -Би өдрийн (хоол) хонины мах идсэн.
- e) Бид одоо (дэлгүүр) явна.
- f) Манай аав (мод) сандал хийсэн.
- g) Бид (англи) сайн ярьдаг, (монгол) муу ярьдаг.
- h) Бид (автобус) ирсэн.

ii) Answer the following questions using either байгаа, бий or байхгүй.

EXAMPLE:

-Чамд олон ном бий юү?

-Надад олон ном байгаа.

-Надад олон ном байхгүй.

- a) Танай аав энд байгаа юу?
- b) Танай ээж тэнд бий юү?
- c) Танай ангид самбар байгаа юу?
- d) Багш ангидаа бий юү?
- e) Та нар монгол хэл сайн сурч байгаа юу?
- f) Миний ном танд байгаа юу?
- g) Үзэг ширээн дээр байгаа юу?
- h) Танай хүү өвдсөн. Одоо гэртээ байгаа юу ?

iii) Answer the following questions in the positive using -can⁴ and then in the negative using -аагүй⁴:

EXAMPLE:

-Та өнөөдөр ажил дээрээ очсон уу?

-Би өнөөдөр ажил дээрээ очсон.

-Би өнөөдөр ажил дээрээ очоогүй.

- a) Чи дэлгүүрээр явсан уу?
- b) Чи ахаасаа ном авсан уу?
- c) Өчигдөр сайхан кино үзсэн үү?
- d) Чи найз дээрээ очсон уу?
- e) Чи өрөөгөө цэвэрлэсэн үү?
- f) Чи даалгавраа хийсэн үү?
- g) Та сайн явав уу?
- h) Баатар өнөөдөр ирэв үү?

iv) Change the following present/future tense sentences to present continuous using байгаа and then to habitual present using -дар⁴ and translate all three:

EXAMPLE:

Би ном уншина.	I will read a book.
Би ном уншиж байгаа.	I am reading a book.
Би ном уншдаг.	I read books.

- a) Би морь унана.
- b) Би даалгавраа хийнэ.
- c) Би гэрээ цэвэрлэнэ.
- d) Баатар Англид очно.
- e) Нохой өөхтэй мах иднэ.
- f) Цэрмаа сургуульдаа автобусаар явна.
- g) Чи аав, ээжтэйгээ суух уу?
- h) Би аав, ээжтэйгээ сууна.

v) In the following sentences, put the noun in brackets into the correct form and put a suitable postposition after it. Make sure that you have the right form for the right postposition:

EXAMPLE:

Миний ном (ширээ) байгаа.
Миний ном ширээн дээр байгаа.

- a) Дорж багш (монгол) ном орчуулж байгаа.
- b) Дээл чинь (шүүгээ) бий.
- c) Би Элчин сайдын (яам) очно.
- d) -Нөгөө мөнгө миний (цүнх) байна уу?
- e) -Үгүй, миний (цүнх) байна.
- f) Би (самбар) бичсэн.
- g) -Чи (хэн) очих вэ?
- h) -Би (найз) очно.

vi) In the following sentences expressing the idea of 'when', put the nouns or pronouns in brackets into the right form (nominative or accusative), depending on whether you have one or two subjects for the main and subordinate clauses and whether or not the

subordinate clause has an object already. Remember that if they are the same, one of them may not be necessary. If necessary, put the reflexive onto the verb in the dative:

EXAMPLE:

(Би) ирэхэд тэр байхгүй байсан.

Намайг ирэхэд тэр байхгүй байсан.

- a) (Би) номын дэлгүүрт очиход, (би) нэг ном авсан.
- b) (Чи) энд ирэхэд, (чи) мөнгө авчирч өгөх үү?
- c) (Дорж) дэлгүүрээр явахад, (Дорж) Дулмаатай хамт байсан уу?
- d) (Дорж) дэлгүүрээр явахад, (Дулмаа) түүнтэй хамт байсан уу?
- e) (Чи) гэртээ харихад, (чи) хэнтэй хамт явах вэ?
- f) (Баатар) өвдөхөд, (ээж нь) нь их санаа зовсон.
- g) (Цэнд) гэрээ цэвэрэхэд, (Долгор) амарсан.
- h) (Нохой) ирэхэд, (хүүхэд) айсан.

vii) Depending on its relation with the subject, replace the genitive in brackets with a possessive particle or the reflexive:

EXAMPLES:

Би (түүний) гэрт очсон.

Би гэрт нь очсон.

Би (миний) гэрт харьсан.

Би гэртээ харьсан.

- a) Би (чиний) номыг уншсан.
- b) Баатар (Баатарын) морийг унаж байна.
- c) Би өнөөдөр (таны) ээжтэй уулзсан.
- d) Долгор (Долгорын) ээжтэй ярьж, (ээжийн) бууз идсэн.
- e) Сайн оюутан (оюутны) багшаас айдаггүй.
- f) Би (миний) гэрээс (миний) ажилд автобусаар явдаг.
- g) (Чиний) гэрээс захиа ирсэн үү?
- h) Багш (багшийн) оюутнаас (оюутны) даалгавар авсан.

viii) Draw clock faces and put on them the times written below:

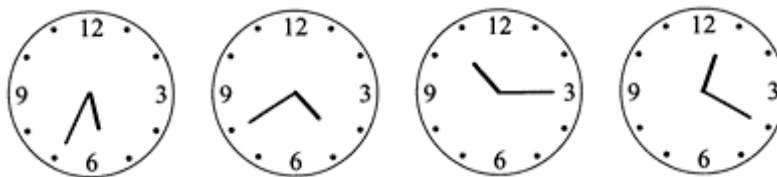
- a) арван хоёр цаг
- b) найм дөч
- c) долоод хорин тав дутуу
- d) арав арван тав
- e) дөрөв гуч
- f) дөрөв хагас
- g) зургаа хорь
- h) ес тавин тав

ix) Write the following times given as numbers out in words:

- a) 10:55
- b) 3:15
- c) 7:40

- d) 6:10
- e) 11:25
- f) 5:35
- g) 4:45
- h) 8:05

x) Write out in Mongolian the times shown on the following clock faces:



EXERCISES

a) Answer the following questions as they apply to you:

1. Сайн байна уу, сонин сайхан юу байна?
2. Та өглөөний хоолоо хэдэн цагт идсэн бэ?
3. Тантай хамт хүн суудаг уу?
4. Та хоолоо идсэн үү?
5. Та ажил дээрээ хэдэн цагт очсон бэ?
6. Ажил дээрээ юу юу хийсэн бэ?
7. Та ажилдаа юугаар явдаг вэ?
8. Та морь унаж чаддаг уу?
9. Таны аав, ээж бий юү?
10. Аав, ээж тань юу хийдэг вэ?

b) Translate from English into Mongolian:

1. What time did you get up today?
2. I got up at a quarter to eight.
3. I had breakfast at ten past eight.
4. My wife works at the bank.
5. I went to her work at ten past two today.
6. The students are very afraid of their teacher.
7. Baatar rides his horse very well.
8. I came to work today by bus.
9. While I was going round the shops my friend came to my house.
10. When I came home I took the book with me.

c) Translate from Mongolian into English:

1. Миний хүү харандаагаар бичдэг. Үзгээр бичиж чаддаггүй.
2. Миний мөнгө чамд байна уу?
3. Байхгүй, чиний цүнхэн дотор байгаа.
4. Би найзтайгаа гэрт нь очсон.

5. Аав, ээжтэй нь уулзсан.
6. Чи ээждээ захиа бичсэн үү?
7. Бичээгүй. Ээж минь одоо их санаа зовж байгаа.
8. Ахаас минь захиа ирсэн.
9. Гэрээсээ захиа авсан, би.
10. Хотоор сонин сайхан юу байна?

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

дэлгүүр	delgüür	shop
дор	dor	under (postposition)
тухай	tuhai	about (postposition)
захиа	zahia	letter
хэзээ	hezee	when (question)
даадгавар	daalgavar	exercises, homework
банк(-ан)	bangk(-an)	bank
аль (алин)	al' (alin)	which (of them)
дутуу	dutuu	lacking, less

CHAPTER SEVEN

TEXT

БИЛЛ АВТОБУСАНД НАЙЗТАЙГАА УУЛЗСАН НЬ НЬ

Билл монгол хэл, түүх сурч, Монголд сууж байна. Тэр өнөөдөр аав, ээждээ захиатай хамт нэг илгээмж явуулна. Билл захиагаа бичиж, дугтуйд хийсэн. Дараа нь бэлгээ хайрцагт хийж, бүгдийг нь авч байрнаасаа гарав. Гарахдаа жижүүртэй "Сайн байна уу?" гэж мэндлэв. Өөр хэнтэй ч уулзаагүй.

Улаанбаатарт нэг тусгай, гаальтай шуудан бий. Тэр шуудан галт тэрэгний буудлын хавьд байдаг. Билл Их сургуулийн өмнөх буудлаас автобусанд суув. Автобусанд Ганболд гэдэг нэг найзтайгаа уулзав. Тэр хоёр бие биетэйгээ "Сайн байна уу, сонин сайхан юу байна" гэж мэндлэв.

Г: -Чи хаачиж байна вэ?

Б: -Би шууданд очиж, аав, ээждээ илгээмж явуулна.

Г: -Аав, ээждээ юу юу явуулах вэ?

Б: -Хоёр ном л явуулна.

Г: -Ямар ямар ном?

Б: -"Монгол зураг", "Монгол гоёл чимэглэлийн урлаг".

Г: -Аа, тэр хоёр их гоё ном. "Монгол гоёл чимэглэлийн урлаг" гэдэг номыг нь

Чүлтэм багш бичсэн шүү. Өөр юу явуулах вэ?

Б: -Өөр юу ч байхгүй. Аа тийм, нэг захиа бий.

Г: -Аав, ээж чинь их баярлах байх даа.

Б: -Чи өөрөө хаачих нь вэ?

Г: -Би номын санд очно. Тэнд зарим нэгэн ном унших хэрэгтэй байна.

Б: -Аа, би ч бас шууданд очсоны дараа тэнд очно.

Г: -За, би энд бууна. Дахиад номын сайд уулзах уу?

Б: -Уулзах байх аа. Баяртай.

Г: -Баяртай.

Comprehension

Багш нөгөө номыг үзсэн.

The teacher saw the book.

Оюутан багшдаа номоо үзүүлсэн.

The student showed his teacher the book.

Тэр гэрээсээ гарсан.

He left home.

Тэр цүнхнээсээ хоол гаргасан.

He took the food out of the bag.

Ажил сайн болсон.

Work has got better.

Дорж ажлаа сайн болгосон.

Dorj has made his work better.

Автобус зогссон.

The bus stopped.

Жолооч автобусаа зогсоосон.	The driver stopped the bus.
Манай сургууль энд байна.	Here is our school.
Манай сургуулийг зуун жилийн өмнө байгуулсан.	Our school was founded (they founded our school) a hundred years ago.
Энийг энд байлгаж болно.	You can leave this here.
Дарга надад уурласан.	The boss was angry with me.
Би даргаа уурлуулсан.	I made the boss angry.
Надад нэг ч мөнгө байхгүй.	I've not got a penny.
Би ч бас явна.	I shall go too.
Дорж л ирсэн байна.	Only Dorj has come.

VOCABULARY

Text

түүх	tüüh	history
илгээмж	ilgeemj	parcel
дугтуй	dugtui	envelope
явуул-(явуулах)	yavuulah	to send
бэлэг	beleg	gift
хайрцаг	hairtsag	box
хии-(хийх)	hiih	to put
бүгд	bügd	everything
жижүүр	jijüür	doorman, concierge
мэндлэ-(мэндлэх)	mendleh	to greet, to say "Hello"
ч	ch	a particle. See grammar.
шуудан	shuudang	post, post office
тусгай	tusgai	special
гааль	gaal'	customs
буудал	buudal	stop, station
хавь	hav'	area, near, nearby
бие биеэ	biye biyee	each other
хаачи-(хаачих)	haachih	to go where
гоёл	goyol	ornament, decoration
чимэглэл	chimeglel	ornament, decoration

урлаг	urlag	art
гоё	goyo	beautiful
шүү	shüü	emphatic particle, “isn’t it” etc.
танайхан	tanaihang	your family
баярла-(баярлах)	bayarlah	be happy, get happy
өөрөө	ööröö	one’s self
зарим	zarim	some
зарим нэгэн	zarim negeng	some
дараа	daraa	(postposition) after
буу-(буух)	buuh	to get off; to come down, dismount
дахиад	dahiad	again
байх аа	baih aa	perhaps, maybe

Comprehension

үзүүл-(үзүүлэх)	üzüüleḥ	to show
гарга-(гаргах)	gargah	to get s.t out
болго-(болгох)	bolgoh	to cause to become, make...
жолооч	jolooch	driver
зогс-(зогсох)	zogsoḥ	to stop (intr.)
зогсоо-(зогсоох)	zogsooh	to stop (tr.)
жил	jil	year
байгуул-(байгуулах)	baiguulah	to cause to be, establish
байлга-(байлгах)	bailgah	to let be, leave be
өмнө	ömnö	(postposition) before, in front of, ago
дарга	darga	boss, chief, director
уурла-(уурлах)	uurlah	to get angry (+dat.)
уурлуул-(уурлуулах)	uurluulah	to make s.b. angry

GRAMMAR**1) Tables of cases**

In the previous chapters we have met all the cases that there are in Mongolian. In this chapter, then, we shall have a table presenting all the cases for all kinds of nouns. This table is given below:

	<i>book</i>	<i>house</i>	<i>meat</i>	<i>camel</i>	<i>store</i>	<i>dog</i>	<i>class</i>
<i>Nom</i>	ном	гэр	мах	тэмээ	сан	нохой	анги
<i>Acc</i>	номыг	гэрийг	махыг	гэмээг	санг	нохойг	ангийг
<i>Gen</i>	номын	гэрийн	махны	тэмээний	сангийн	нохойн	ангийн
<i>Dat</i>	номд	гэрт	маханд	тэмээнд	санд	нохойд	ангид
<i>Abl</i>	номоос	гэрээс	махнаас	тэмээнээс	сангаас	нохойгоос	ангиас
<i>Instr</i>	номоор	гэрээр	махаар	гэмээгээр	сангаар	нохойгоор	ангиар
<i>Com</i>	номтой	гэртэй	махтай	тэмээтэй	сантай	нохойтой	ангиатай

Here is also a table of all personal pronouns in all cases:

	<i>I</i>	<i>you (fam)</i>	<i>you (hon)</i>	<i>he/she/it</i>	<i>we</i>	<i>you (pl)</i>	<i>they</i>
<i>Nom</i>	би	чи	та	тэр	бид	та нар	тэд
<i>Acc</i>	намайг	чамайг	таныг	түүнийг	биднийг	та нарыг	тэднийг
<i>Gen</i>	миний	чиний	таны	түүний	бидний	та нарын манай	тэдний танай
<i>Dat</i>	надад	чамд	танд	түүнд	бидэнд	Та нарт	тэдэнд
<i>Abl</i>	надаас	чамаас	танаас	түүнээс	биднээс	Та нараас	тэднээс
<i>Instr</i>	надаар	чамаар	танаар	түүгээр	биднээр	та нараар	тэднээр
<i>Com</i>	надтай	чамтай	тантай	түүнтэй	бидэнтэй	та нартай	тэдэнтэй

In the plural, both бид and тэд can be бид нар and тэд нар, taking the same endings as та нар. In the genitive of бид and та нар, you will see that two forms have been given. The манай and танай are all that remain of a declension of these two words with ман- and тан- stems. It used to be that the ман- and тан- stems, excluded either the listener or the speaker respectively. Now, however, this distinction has dropped out, as has the declension, leaving only these genitive forms, which are used in such instances as:

манай Монгол	(our) Mongolia
манай монголчууд	we Mongols
танай аиличууд	you English

There are also declensions for the demonstrative pronouns энэ and тэр and their plural forms эд and тэд:

	<i>this</i>	<i>that</i>	<i>these</i>	<i>those</i>
<i>Nom</i>	энэ	тэр	эд	тэд
<i>Acc</i>	үүнийг	түүнийг	эднийг	тэднийг
<i>Gen</i>	үүний	түүнийг	эдний	тэдний
<i>Dat</i>	үүнд	түүнд	эдэнд	тэдэнд
<i>Abl</i>	үүнээс	түүнээс	эднээс	тэднээс
<i>Instr</i>	үүгээр	түүгээр	эднээр	тэднээр
<i>Com</i>	үүнтэй	түүнтэй	эдэнтэй	тэдэнтэй

Энэ and тэр, this and that, also have the following forms in everyday speech:

<i>Nom</i>	энэ	тэр
<i>Acc</i>	энийг	тэрийг
<i>Gen</i>	энэний	тэрний
<i>Dat</i>	энэнд	тэрэнд
<i>Abl</i>	энэнээс	тэрнээс
<i>Instr</i>	энүүгээр	тэрүүгээр
<i>Com</i>	энэнтэй	тэрэнтэй

The dative of би, надад, can also be над or, more colloquially, надаа.

2) The causative

The causative is a form of the Mongolian verb which we do not have in English. As its name implies it deals with ideas like causing somebody to do something, or letting something happen. Here are a few examples:

Би түүнд ном үзүүлсэн. I showed him (let him see) the book.

Багш намайг гэрт буцаасан. Teacher sent me (let/made me go) home.

More often than not, we translate the Mongolian causative into English by using a different verb, so that “go”, which cannot take an object, becomes “send”, which can. Sometimes in English the two verbs may look the same, as in the case of the verb “stop”, where we can either say, for example, “the bus stopped” (no object) or “the driver stopped the bus” (where “bus” is the object). Verbs which take objects are called “transitive” and those which don’t are called “intransitive”. Very often, a causative sentence has only (1) a subject, (2) an object (called the “direct object”) which may be in

the accusative, and (3) a causative verb. Other ideas, like “from”, “to” and so on, are placed where necessary. See the following sentences:

Дарга¹ намайг² явуулна³. The boss will send me.

Би¹ түүнийг² оруулахгүй³. I won't let him in

There are four ways of forming the causative in Mongolian, which involve dropping the infinitive ending and adding one of four new stems. The four stems are as follows:

- i) -лга-₄ added to stems ending in a long vowel or a diphthong.
- ii) -га-⁴ added to stems ending in -л, -р, -с and -д.
- iii) -аа-⁴ added to certain stems ending in a phonetic short vowel. Certain verbs take a -раа-⁴ variant of the form.
- iv) -уул-₂ added to other verbs ending in short vowels and some in long vowels and diphthongs. Probably the most common causative stem.

Here are the stems in action:

verb		stem	causative	meaning
i)				
хийх	do	хий	хийлгэх	have s.t. done, have s.t. made
заах	teach	заа	заалгах	have s.t. taught
уух	drink	уу	уулгах	cause to drink
ii)				
олох	find	ол	олгох	supply
босох	get up	бос	босгох	get s.b. up, put s.t. up
хүрэх	get to, reach	хүр	хүргэх	send, escort
iii)				
зогсох	stand, stop	зогсо-	зогсоох	stop s.t.
зовох	worry, suffer	зово-	зовоох	cause worry, make suffer
унах	fall	уна-	унагаах	push over, drop
iv)				
явах	go	ява-	явуулах	send
үзэх	see	үзэ-	үзүүлэх	show

As you can see from the table above, it is not just intransitive verbs which are made transitive by putting them into the causative. Words like “see”, which can obviously take an object, also have causative forms. In such instances, the English will have two objects, as in the following examples:

I showed him¹ a book².

She made me¹ drink some tea².

The object of the causative part of the sentence, that is the person made to do something, might go into the dative. This is called the “indirect object”. The direct object might go into the accusative as necessary. The above sentences would translate into Mongolian as follows:

Би түүнд¹ ном² үзүүлсэн.

Тэр надад¹ цай² уулгасан.

In the above sentences, the indirect objects are in the dative because they are being asked to do something for themselves, i.e. drink some tea, or look at a book.

Compare these with the following sentence:

Би тэрүүгээр захиа бичүүлсэн.

I got her to write the letter.

In this example, the indirect object is being asked to do something for someone else. This is why the instrumental is being used. It is as though someone is being used as the instrument of someone else's will.

It would be possible to have both dative and instrumental indirect objects in one sentence:

Нөгөө номыг чамд багшаараа явуулна. I shall send the book to you **through** our teacher.

Here are some examples of causatives with one and two objects in sentences:

Тэр дээлээ хийлгэсэн.

He had his coat made (for him by sb. else).

Та энийг хэнээр бичүүлсэн бэ?

Who did you get to write this?

Багш намайг ангиас гаргасан.

Teacher threw me out of the class.

Чи миний санааг их зовоосон.

You have caused me a lot of worry.

Because the causative is used to express ideas that can be translated more often than not with different words in English (like go—send) they will be treated as such in the vocabulary lists and given as items in their own right. If you have a word for which you need the causative which you do not know, and you cannot see from the stem whether it ends in an unstressed vowel or a consonant, the best guess is to use the -үүл-² stem to form the causative. This is the most common and even if not correct will be understood.

A very few words have more than one possible causative form, and these usually have the same meaning. байх—to be, and олох—to find, have two causative forms which have different meanings:

байгуулах to cause to be, to establish (like a state, a school and so on)

байлгах to let be, to leave something where or how it is

олуулах to get somebody to find something

олгох to supply (e.g. for an army), provide

3) The particle ч

This particle is used very greatly in a wide variety of circumstances. It is also very simple to use. It can be used to translate the English “even” in the following way:

Хүүхэд ч мэднэ.	Even a child knows that.
Надад нэг ч мөнгө байхгүй.	I don't (even) have a penny.

It can also be used to translate the English “ever” or “at all”:

ямар ч	whichever
юу ч	whatever, anything at all

See how it is used in the following examples in sentences:

Эднээс аль нь болох вэ?	Which of these will do?
Аль нь ч болно.	Any one at all.
Би хэзээ явах вэ?	When shall I go?
Хэзээ ч болно.	Any time you like.
Чи хэнтэй явах вэ?	Who are you going with?
Хэнтэй ч хамаагүй.	It doesn't matter who.
Юу болсон бэ?	What's happened?
Юу ч болоогүй.	Nothing at all.
Бид нар кинонд явна. Чи яах вэ?	We're going to the cinema. What about you?
Би ч бас явна.	I shall go too.

4) The particle л

This particle is used basically to cover the idea of “alone”, “only” or “just”. It has no real meaning in its own right, but adds an emphatic quality to the word it follows. See the following sentences:

Дорж л чадна, өөр хэн ч чадахгүй.	Only Dorj can do it, nobody else.
Мөнгө бий, зав л байхгүй.	I've got the money, only not the time.
Би сууж л байна.	I'm just sitting here.
Тэр бас л ирээгүй байна.	He still hasn't come yet.

DRILLS

i) Put the verb in the following sentences into the causative and change the subject to indirect object. Make the word in brackets the subject. Remember that the change in object could mean juggling with reflexives and possessive particles. Translate both:

EXAMPLE:

Багш ном үзсэн. (Би)

The teacher saw the book.

Би багшдаа ном үзүүлсэн.

I showed the book to my teacher.

- a) Манай ээж хоол хийдэг. (манайхан)
- b) Манай хүү сургуулиасаа гэртээ буцсан. (багш)
- c) Дарга чамд уурласан. (чи)
- d) Би эм уусан. (эмч)
- e) Манай дарга мэдлээ. (би)
- f) Билл монгол хэл сурч байна. (багш)
- g) Хүүхдүүд эрт босдог. (аав)
- h) Миний охин найз гэртээ хүрсэн. (би)

ii) Put the noun or pronoun in brackets into the accusative, dative or instrumental depending on the nature and meaning of the causative verb. Don't forget the reflexive if necessary.

EXAMPLE:

Эмч (би) эм уулгасан.

Эмч надад эм уулгасан.

The doctor made me take medicine.

- a) Оюутнууд (найз) даалгавраа бичүүлэх хэрэггүй.
- b) Томоотой хүүхдүүд (аав, ээж) уурлуулдаггүй.
- c) Билл (аав, ээж) захиа явуулав.
- d) Би өөрөө явахгүй, (чи) явуулна.
- e) Би (зурагчин) зураг авахуулсан.
- f) Монгол (улс) 1911 (мянга есөн зуун арван нэгэн) онд байгуулсан.
- g) Энэ (хүн) оруулах уу?
- h) Манай хүүхдүүд миний (санаа) их зовоодог.

iii) Change the following positive sentences into negative ones using “ч” and the word in brackets:

EXAMPLE:

Би мэднэ (юу)

I know

Би юу ч мэдэхгүй.

I don't know anything at all.

- a) Надад мөнгө бий. (нэг)
- b) Олон хүн ирсэн. (хэн)
- c) Энэ ном дэлгүүр бүхэнд байна. (хаана)

- d) Надад энэ хоёр номын нэг нь бий. (аль нь)
- e) Тэр хүн найз нараа мартдаг. (хэзээ)
- f) Та нар ном авч болно. (ямар)
- g) Та нар ирж болно. (хэдийд)
- h) Та нар явж болно. (хаашаа)

iv) Using the following sentences, make two new ones by placing the particle “л” after different nouns or pronouns.

EXAMPLE:

Энийг Дорж мэднэ.

Dorj knows this.

Дорж энийг л мэднэ.

Dorj knows only this.

Энийг Дорж л мэднэ.

Only Dorj knows this.

- a) Энэ номыг би уншиж байна.
- b) Энэ хичээлийг би сурсан.
- c) Би тэр хүнийг таньдаг.
- d) Би мах иддэг.
- e) Дорж кино үзнэ.
- f) Би Монголд очно.
- g) Тэр гэртээ харина.
- h) Долгор найзаа хүлээж байна.

EXERCISES

a) Answer the following questions:

1. Багш өнөөдөр чамайг ангидаа оруулсан уу?
2. Өнөө өглөө чи өөрөө боссон уу, ээж чинь чамайг босгосон уу?
3. Та их санаа зовдог уу? Юу юу таны санааг зовоодог вэ?
4. Даалгавар хийхдээ чи өөрөө хийдэг үү, өөр нэг хүнээр хийлгэдэг үү?
5. Чи өөрөө хоол хийдэг үү, ээжээрээ хийлгэдэг үү?
6. Та хэнээр монгол хэл заалгасан бэ?
7. Танай багш их уурладаг уу?
8. Та нар багшаа их уурлуулдаг уу?
9. Энэ долоо хоногт захиа явуулсан уу?
10. Хэнд захиа явуулсан бэ?

b) Translate into Mongolian:

1. Yesterday I sent a letter to my mother.
2. Today I made the teacher very angry. He threw me out of class.
3. Our school was founded many years ago.
4. I'll leave this book here. I'll pick it up (get it) later (afterwards).
5. The driver stopped the bus at the bus-stop.
6. I have only four sheep, but many cows.
7. Out of us, only Baatar rides well.

8. I don't have a single class today.
 9. I'm going to see a film tonight. Are you coming?
 10. Mongolia is a beautiful country. So is England.

c) Translate into English:

1. Оюутнууд багшаа ангиас гаргасан.
2. Би нохойдоо мах идүүлсэн.
3. Доржид хоол ч, мөнгө ч байхгүй.
4. Энэ хавьд кино, театр юу ч байхгүй.
5. Тэр хавьд кино, театр бүх юм бий.
6. Зарим хүнд юу ч байхгүй.
7. Өнөөдрийн хичээлд багш л ирсэн.
8. Автобусыг жолооч л зогсоодог.
9. Чи өөрөө бичээгүй байна. Хэнээр бичүүлсэн бэ?
10. Би аав, ээждээ шуудангаар нлгээмж явуулсан.

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

мэдэ-(нэдэх)	medeh	to know
хамаа	hamaa	relation
хамаагүй	hamaagüi	doesn't matter, never mind
сурга-(сургах)	surgah	to teach (cause to learn)
буцаа-(буцаах)	butsaah	to send back
эм	em	medicine
эмч	emch	doctor
мэдүүл-(мэдүүлэх)	medüüle	to let know, tell, inform
охин найз	ohing naiz	girlfriend
хэрэггүй	hereggüi	must not, need not
томоотой	tomotoi	good, quiet
зурагчин	zuragchin	photographer
мянга	myangga	thousand
зуу	zuu	hundred
он	ong	year
хэдийд	hediid	when
хаашаа	haashaa	where to
уна-(унах)	unah	to fall
унагаа-(унагаах)	unagaah	to drop, push over
марта-(мартах)	martah	to forget

Chapter seven 83

заа-(заах)	zaah	to tell, teach, show
заалга-(заалгах)	zaalgah	to get taught
театр	chyatr	theatre

CHAPTER EIGHT

TEXT

НОМЫН САНД

Билл шууданд очиж, юмаа явуулаад номын санд автобусаар очив. Тэнд Ганболдтой дахиад уулзсан.

Билл "Сайн байн уу?" гэж Ганболдтой мэндлээд, "Юу уншиж байна вэ?" гэж асуув.

Г: -Монголын хувьсгалын тухай нэг ном уншиж байна. Чи юу юу унших вэ?

Б: -Би оросоор нэг ном унших ёстой. Хөөе, Ганбаа, чи өнөө орой манайд очих уу?

Г: -Очъё, очъё. Хэдэн цагт?

Б: -Долоон цагт оч. Нэг шил архи авчраарай. Би хоол хийнэ.

Г: -За, нэг шил юм аваачъя. Өөр хүн байх уу?

Б: -Өөр хүн байна. Нөгөө франц эмэгтэй оюутныг сая урилаа. Баатар одоо хотд байгаа юу?

Г: -Баатар бий. Юу гэж?

Б: -Түүнийг ч бас урих хэрэгтэй. Гэвч утасны дугаар нь надад байхгүй.

Г: -Надад бий. Чамд өгье.

Б: -За, би бичээд авъя.

Г: -Цаас, харандаа байна уу?

Б: -Байна, байна.

Г: -Хорин долоо гурван зуун дөчин нэг. За, бичив үү?

Б: -Бичлээ.

Г: -Юмаа явуулсан уу?

Б: -Явуулаад сап тэндээс ирлээ.

Г: -Чи орос ном уншина гэв үү? Гэтэл чи өөрөө орос хэлгүйшүү шүү дээ.

Б: -Би өөрөө орос хэлгүй боловч манай багш орос хэлтэй. Би багшаараа уншуулна. Өө, багш ороод ирлээ. За, би гэртээ очоод Баатартай утсаар ярина. Орой уулзъя, баяртай.

Г: -За, баяртай. Орой уулзъя.

Comprehension

За, явъя.

OK, let's go.

Дараа нь уулзъя.

See you later.

За, би явлаа.

Right, I'm off.

Тэр сап явлаа.

He has just gone.

Би одоо очлоо.

I'm on my way now.

Баярлалаа.

Thank you.

Би багшийнд очсон.	I went to my teacher's house.
Тэр морьтойд нь өгсөн.	He gave it to the man with the horse.
Би гэртээ очоод амарсан.	After I got home I rested.
Сайн яваарай!	Have a good trip!
Надад нэг аяга цай өгөөрэй.	Please give me a cup of tea.
Надад үзүүлээч.	Could you show it to me?

VOCABULARY

Text

юм(-ан)	yum(-an)	thing
дахь-(дахих)	dahih	to repeat, do again
хувьсгал	huv'sgal	revolution
ёстой	yostoi	necessary, have to
шил(-эн)	shil(-en)	bottle, glass
архи(-н)	arhi(-n)	arkhi, Mongolian vodka; drink
франц	frants	France; French
сая	saya	just, just now
урь-(урих)	urih	to invite
юу гэж	yuu gej	why (do you ask)
дугаар	dugaar	number (room, phone, etc.)
цаас(ан)	tsaas	paper
боллоо	bolloo	that's it
орос	oros	Russia, Russian
гэтэл	getel	but

Comprehension

баярлалаа	bayarlalaa	thank you
-----------	------------	-----------

GRAMMAR

1) The voluntative

The voluntative expresses the idea of “let’s...” or “I’d like to...”. It is formed by adding the following endings to the verb stem:

i) -я ³	after stems ending in a long vowel, diphthong or soft sign:
байх—энд бай я	I'll stay here
суух—тэнд суу я	let's sit down over there
хийх—би хий е	let me do it
ii) -ья, -ьё	after back vowel stems ending in a consonant:
явах—за, яв ья	OK, let's go
очих—за, оч ьё	OK, let's go in
авах—энийг ав ья	I'll take this one
iii) -ье	after a front vowel stem ending in a consonant:
үзэх—үз ье	let's see, let's have a look

The voluntative is pronounced as though written with a double “ii”, so that явъя sounds like “yavii”.

2) The short past tense -лаа⁴

This tense, which really is an immediate past, has a rather strange usage. Compare the following sentences:

Тэр ирлээ.	He has just come.
Би явлаа.	I'm just going.

The meaning of the former is indeed past. But the meaning of the second sentence is in fact future. It is as though the past is so immediate that it can be used for something that has not yet actually happened but definitely will soon. The formation of this tense is easy. Regardless of the nature of the stem, the suffix -лаа⁴ is added, according to the vowel harmony. Look at the following examples in sentences:

Тэр дөнгөж сая яв лаа .	He has just this minute gone.
Би одоо оч лоо .	I'm on my way now.
Сая дуус лаа .	I've just finished.
Одоо дуус лаа .	I'm just finishing.
За, бол лоо .	Right, that's it; that's done.

3) Compound cases

The tables presented in the last chapter formally finished off the case endings on Mongolian nouns. There is, however, more to be said on the matter. Mongolian can add

more than one case ending onto the same word. Some possible combinations are shown below:

манайхаас	(gen+abl) from our house
багшийнд	(gen+dat) at the teacher's house
малгайтайд (нь)	(com+dat) to the man with the hat
Доржийнхтой	(gen+com) with Dorj's...
Доржийнхонтой	(gen+com) with Dorj's family

It is most often the genitive which is followed by another case ending, but other cases are used in the same way. When the genitive is used in this way, it is almost always somebody's house or family that is being talked about.

4) Expressions of "then"

"Then" is expressed in Mongolian in several ways. One is to add a suffix to the verb stem. This suffix is sometimes called the perfective converb. Converb because it goes with a verb, perfective because it describes a perfect or completed action. In the same way, what we have so far called the present participle is also known as the imperfective converb. Whatever tense one is using, at whatever time, if two things are happening at the same time, say because one is sitting and drinking beer, the first action is not over before the second starts. It is therefore unfinished and imperfect. When you do one thing and then do something else, the first action is completed or at least given up on before embarking on the second.

Compare the following examples:

Хоолоо идэж, пиво уусан.	I ate and had some beer [same time].
Хоолоо идээд пиво уусан.	I ate and then had some beer.

In the first sentence, the speaker was still eating when the beer was drunk. In the second, the meal was already over.

The formation of this converb is relatively simple. It is done by adding the suffix -аад⁴ to the verb stem. Where the stem ends in a short "и" not preceded by ж, ч or ш, then the perfective converb ending is -иад⁴:

унших—уншаад	read—having read
очих—очоод	go to—having gone to
явах—яваад	go—having gone
урих—уриад	invite—having invited

Another way of translating the idea of "then" is to use the perfective converb of the verb тэгэх, making тэгээд. This verb is rather special and will be discussed in full in Chapter Ten. Here are a few examples in sentences:

Би гэртээ очоод цай уусан.	When I got home I had some tea.
Би аваад ирье.	I'll go and get it [=get it then come].
Тэр даалгавраа хийгээд амарсан.	Having done her homework, she rested.
Баатар ирсэн. Тэгээд явсан.	Baatar came. Then he went.

The Mongolian for “why” is formed using this converb, from the verb яах, meaning “to do what?”. This verb will also be discussed in Chapter Ten. Compare the following two questions:

Чи яаж явсан бэ?	How did you go (lit. doing what...)?
Чи яагаад яагаад бэ?	Why did you go (lit. having done what...)?

When followed by the verb байх, the construction means to keep on doing something:

Тэр тэнд суугаад л байна.	She just keeps on sitting there.
Тэр хүн намайг хараад байна.	He keeps looking at me.
Тэр өчигдөр энд, ирээд байсан.	He kept on coming here yesterday.
Тэр энд ирээд л байдаг байсан.	He used to keep on coming here.

5) “But”

There are several ways of saying “but” in Mongolian. One way is to use the conjunctions гэвч, боловч, байвч, or харин between the two parts of the statement:

Дорж ирсэн. Гэвч авгай нь ирээгүй.	Dorj came but his wife did not.
Чамд байхгүй боловч надад бий.	You might not have any but I have.
Лондон явах санаа байвч зав гарахгүй байна.	I want to go to London but I have no time.
Тэр ирэх хэрэгтэй байсан, харин ирээгүй.	He should have come but did not.

Another way is to use the suffix -вч on the first verb. The first three of the above four conjunctions are formed from this construction, the first from гэх, to say; the second from болох, to become; and the third from байх, to be. Using the conjunctions байвч or боловч, or the -вч ending, the subjects of both parts of the sentence remain nominative, whether both parts have the same or different subjects:

Би хэлэвч чи соносдоггүй.	I tell you but you don't listen.
Тэр архи уувч их уудаггүй.	He drinks, but not much.

Not only is it more common in the colloquial language to use one of the conjunctions rather than the -вч ending, it must also be remembered that the -вч ending is only ever used for repeated, habitual actions, never of one-off events. “I came but he didn't”, therefore, would have to be “Би ирсэн боловч тэр ирээгүй”.

6) "Please" and "thank you"

Expressions like please and thank you are not often used in Mongolian. This is not to say that they lack politeness, however. Forms of address for strangers, ways of talking to, for example, older people, rules of behaviour as host or guest are very strong and show great politeness. Such things will be discussed in a later chapter. But there are ways of translating the English "please" and "thank you".

"Thank you" is translated by using the short past tense -лаа⁴ ending on the verb баярлах (to get/be happy) баярлалаа, so that the Mongolian for thank you would translate back into English as "I've got happy":

-Энэ номыг би чамд өгье.

I'll give you this book.

-За, баярлалаа.

Great, thanks.

Other past tense endings can be used, giving for example баярласан or баярлав can also be used, but are less frequent.

The idea of "please" is expressed in Mongolian by using either one of three suffixes on the relevant verb. These suffixes are -аарай⁴, -аат⁴, and -аач⁴. The first two are more polite, the last one more familiar. An -ээ is often added to the last ending by way of emphasis, and this emphatic ending does not change according to the vowel harmony:

Манайд ирээрэй.

Please come to our house.

Надад нэгийг нь өгөөч.

Please give one to me.

Энийг аваач ээ!

Please take this.

Та суугаат.

Please take a seat.

A question can also be used to express the idea of please, usually in a quite formal, often written, context, when the question marker *yy*² follows the present-future form of the verb. Compare the following:

Надад тусалж өгнө үү.

Can you help me please.

Надад тусалж өгөх ү ү?

Will you help me?

The expression сайн яваарай, meaning "have a good trip", is formed using this construction. When spoken to in this way when taking leave, it is customary to reply сайн сууж байгаарай, or, literally, "please stay here well".

DRILLS

i) Put the following declarative sentences into the volunative:

EXAMPLE:

Бид дэлгүүрээр явна.

We're going to the shops.

Дэлгүүрээр явъя!

Let's go to the shops!

- a) Бид нар маргааш ууланд гарна.
- b) Кино үзнэ.
- c) Бид; сургуульдаа явна.
- d) Өнөө орой Доржийнд очно.
- e) Ном уншина.
- f) Баатартай уулзана.
- g) Одоо ажилдаа очно.
- h) Одоо гэртээ харина.

ii) The following sentences using the -лаа⁴ ending may be past or future in meaning. Mark as either past or future and translate accordingly:

EXAMPLE:

Би одоо очлоо. (Future) I'm on my way.

- a) Баатар сая хүрлээ.
- b) Баатар одоо ирлээ.
- c) Тэр хоёр айраг уулаа.
- d) Хаан сая ордноосоо мордлоо.
- e) За, би явлаа.
- f) Дорж сая өрөөндөө орлоо.
- g) Харин одоо явлаа.
- h) Багш өрөөнд ороод шууд суулаа.

iii) Put the noun in brackets into the sentence with compound case endings:

EXAMPLE:

Би (with Dorj's family) дэлгүүрээр явсан.

Би Доржийнхонтой дэлгүүрээр явсан.

- a) Өнөө орой (teacher Dorj's house) очно.
- b) Энэ номыг (to the man with the hat) нь өг.
- c) Мөнгөө (from the man with the hat) нь ав.
- d) (From our house) танайх хол биш.
- e) Чи (to their house) очиж үзсэн үү?*
- f) (To their house) очиж үзээгүй. Харин (Dolgor's house) очиж үзсэн.

iv) Join the following sentences using тэгээд and -аад⁴ :

EXAMPLE:

Билл номын сангийн буудлаас авчобусанд суусан. Bill got on the bus at the library.

Тэр Их сургууль дээр буусан. He got off at the University

Билл номын сангийн буудлаас автобусанд суусан. Тэгээд их сургууль дээр буусан. Bill got on the bus at the library. Then he got off at the University.

Билл номын сангийн буудлаас автобусанд суугаад Их сургууль дээр буусан. Bill got on the bus at the library and then got off at the University.

* present participle+үзэх (to see)="experience", "have you ever...?"

- a) Би өнөөдөр сургуульдаа очсон. Хичээл хийсэн.
- b) Сайхан амарсан. Ажилдаа орсон.
- c) Бид ууланд гарсан. Гэртээ харьсан.
- d) Дүү даалгавраа хийсэн. Найз дээрээ очсон.
- e) Маргааш би эрт босно. Цайгаа ууна. Ажилдаа явна.
- f) Билл энд нэг сар сууна. Англидаа буцна.
- g) Миний хүү, би чиний багштай уулзсан. Санаа зовсон.
- h) Чамаас захиа авсан. Их баярласан.

v) Join the following sentences with one of the "but" conjunctions discussed above or with the ending -вч. Remember that the conjunctions can be used any time, the -вч ending can't.

EXAMPLE:

Би ирсэн. Тэр ирээгүй.

I came. He didn't

Би ирсэн боловч тэр ирээгүй.

I came but he didn't

- a) Авах санаа байсан. Мөнгө байгаагүй.
- b) Өнөөдөр ажилдаа очсон. Даргатайгаа уулзаагүй.
- c) Тэр захиа бичдэг. Их юм бичдэггүй.
- d) Тэр цай чанасан. Надад өгөөгүй.
- e) Монгол хэл хэцүү байна. Сурсны дараа хэцүү биш.
- f) Тэр надад номоо өгсөн. Би бас л уншаагүй байна.
- g) Найзындаа очсон. Тэр байхгүй байсан.
- h) Талх авах санаа байсан. Дэлгүүр хаалттай байсан.

EXERCISES

a) Answer the questions as they apply to you:

- 1. Чи өглөө босоод юу юу иддэг вэ?
- 2. Цайгаа уугаад юу хийдэг вэ?
- 3. Ажил дээрээ очоод юу юу хийдэг вэ?
- 4. Ажлаа дуусаад гэртээ харьдаг уу?
- 5. Хариад юу юу хийдэг вэ?
- 6. Чи найзындаа их ондог уу?
- 7. Найз нар чинь танайд их очдог уу?
- 8. Та нар айраг их уудаг уу?
- 9. Ажил чинь танайхаас хол уу?
- 10. Чи Монголд очиж үзсэн үү?

b) Translate from English into Mongolian:

- 1. -Have you ever been to Mongolia?
- 2. -Yes, I have. I was there this summer.
- 3. -Did you try the airag?

4. -Yes. It was very tasty.
5. -Where did you go?
6. -I stayed* three days in Ulaanbaatar and then went to Tsetserleg.
7. -Then what did you do?
8. -I stayed in Tsetserleg four days then I went back to Ulaanbaatar.
9. -Do you have friends in Ulaanbaatar?
10. -Yes. I went to their house. We ate buuz and drank airag.

c) Translate from Mongolian into English:

1. -Билл ээ, чи бууз идэж үзсэн үү?
2. -Үзээгүй. Одоо үзье.
3. -Өнөө орой кино үзэх үү?
4. -Үзье. Хоолоо идээд явъя.
5. -Май, буузнаас ав.
6. -Баярлалаа. Яасан амттай бууз вэ!
7. -За, явъя!
8. -Ээж ээ, одоо бид хоёр явлаа.
9. -За, баяртай. Билл ээ, манайд дахиад ирээрэй.
10. -За, ирнэ ээ, баяртай!

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

дуус-(дуусах)	duusah	to finish
пиво(-н)	pivo(-n)	beer
хара-(харах)	harah	to look (at)
хаан	haang	Khan, emperor
ордон	ordong	palace
мордо-(мордох)	mordoh	to set off
шууд	shuud	straight away, immediately
хол	hol	far

* хонох

үзэ-(үзэх)	üzeh	here: to study; try, experience
чана-(чанах)	chanah	to boil (tr.)
талх	talh	bread
хаалттай	haalttai	closed
хоно-(хонох)	honoh	spend a day and a night, stay the night
Цэцэрлэг	Tsetserleg	name of a town (=“garden”)
май	mai	here, here you are
хэцүү	hetsüü	difficult

CHAPTER NINE

TEXT

ОЮУТНЫ БАИРАНД (Баатарын гэрийн утас дуугарав.)

Ба: Байна уу?

Би: Байна. Баатар уу?

Ба: Тийм ээ, Баатар байна. Хэн бэ?

Би: Билл байна. Сайн уу?

Ба: Сайн. Сайн байна уу? Сонин юу байна?

Би: Сайн, сонин юмгүй ээ. Баатар аа, чи өнөө орой завтай юу?

Ба: Завтай. Юу гэж?

Би: Би өнөө орой чамайг урих гэсэн юм. Ирж чадах уу?

Ба: Чадна, чадна. Хэдэн цагт очих вэ?

Би: Яг одоо хүрээд ир. Чи манайд ер нь ирээгүй болохоор би чамд зам зааж өгье.

Их сургууль руу явдаг автобусанд суугаад энсийн буудалд бууна.

Тэгээд...хуучин циркийг мэдэх үү?

Ба: Мэднэ.

Би: Тэгээд цирк руу яв. Тэндээс манайхыг олоход амархан. Ойлгов уу?

Ба: За, ойлгосон. Одоо очлоо.

Хагас цагийн дараа Баатар Их сургуулийн гадаад оюутны байранд хүрэв. Жижүүрт үнэмлэхээ үзүүлж, "Биллтэй уулзахаар ирлээ" гээд шатаар дээш гарав. Тэгээд Биллийн өрөөнд орж, "Сайн байна уу" гэж Биллтэй мэндлээд гэнэт зочдыг харж, "Өө, Ганболд, Анн хоёр ирчихэж. Та хоёр сайн уу?" гээд орон дээр суулаа. Билл үхрийн шарсан мах, төмстэй шөл авчирч, бүх хүнд өгөөд "За, сайхан хооллоорой" гэж хэлэв. "Та нар цай зооглох уу?" гэж Билл асуухад тэд нар "За, ууяа" гэж хариулав. Тэгээд хоолоо идсэний дараа Билл архи задалж, хүн бүхэнд өгөв. Тэгээд "За, эрүүл мэндийн төлөө!" гэж тулгаад бүгдээрээ уучихав.

Comprehension

Тэр над руу ирсэн.

He came toward/up to me.

Би гэр лүүгээ явсан.

I went toward my house.

Тэр Ганболд руу утасдсан.

He phoned up Ganbold.

Чи тэгж болохгүй гэж би бодож байна.

I don't think you can do that.

Би гэртээ харих гэсэн.

I thought I might go home.

Галт тэрэг явах гэж байна.

The train is about to leave.

Дорж гэдэг хүн.

A man called Dorj.

Дорж гэдэг нэртэй хүн.	A man named Dorj.
-Чи яагаад ирсэн бэ?	Why did you come?
-Чамтай уулзах гээд (ирсэн).	(I came) to meet you.
-Чамтай уулзахаар ирсэн.	I came to meet you.
Тэр явчихжээ.	He has just left.
-Миний мөнгө хаана байна вэ?	Where is my money?
-Тэр хүн авчихжээ!	That man took it!

VOCABULARY**Text**

дуу(-н)	duu(-n)	sound
дуугар-(дуугарах)	duugarah	to make a noise
зав	zav	free time
завтай	zavtai	having free time, free
руу/луу ²	ruu/luu ²	towards
яг	yag	exactly, right
ер нь	yör n'	in general, in fact
зам	zam	road, way
эцэс	etses	end, final, last
хуучин	huuchin	old
цирк	tsirk	circus
амархан	amarhang	easy
ойлго-(ойлгох)	oilgoh	to understand
гадаад	gadaad	outside, foreign
үнэмлэх	ünemleh	ID card
шат(-ан)	shat(-an)	stairs
дээш	deesh	up, upwards
гэнэт	genet	suddenly
шара-(шарах)	sharah	to fry
шөл	shöl	soup
төмс(-өн)	töms(-ön)	potato
бүх(-эн)	büh(-en)	all

бүх хүн	büh hūng	everybody
хүн бүхэн	hūng bühen	everybody
хоол-(хооллох)	hoolloh	to eat (hon.)
сайхан хооллоорой	saihang hoollooroi	“bon appetit”, enjoy!
зоогло-(зооглох)	zoogloh	to eat, consume (hon.)
бусад	busad	the others
хүмүүс	hümüüs	people
хариул-(хариулах)	hariulah	to answer
бүгдээрээ	bügdeeree	everybody, all (of them, us, etc)
задла-(задлах)	zadlah	to open (bottles, packets etc.)
эрүүл	erүүл	health
мэнд	mend	health
төлөө	tölöö	(<i>postposition</i>) for (the sake of)
эрүүл мэндийн	erүүл mendiin	cheers
төлөө	tölöö	
тэднүүс	tednüüs	they (coll.)
тулга-(тулгах)	tulgah	to clink (glasses)

GRAMMAR

1) "Towards"

The idea of “towards” is expressed in Mongolian by the use of the word *pyy*². There is some argument as to whether this is in fact a case suffix (it changes with the vowel harmony) or a postposition (it follows the noun and is written as a separate word in the Cyrillic, but does not take the genitive usual for a postposition).

When it follows a word ending in -p it changes to *луу*², and when it is used with the reflexive it takes an intrusive -r- followed by -aa²:

Би гэр лүүгээ явсан.	I went towards my home
Тэр ажил руугаа явсан.	She has gone to her work.
Би сургууль руу нь явсан.	I went toward his school.
Тэд(нүүс) Улаанбаатар луу явсан.	They headed for Ulaanbaatar.

This suffix can also be used instead of the dative for telephoning someone, but note the slight change in meaning when it is used:

Би Ганболдод утасдаж хэлсэн.

I told Ganbold on the phone.

Би Ганболд руу утасдсан.

I phoned up Ganbold.

2) Uses of the verb рэх ("to say")

This verb has many uses in Mongolian, besides its simplest function as the verb "to say". Here follow explanations of its various uses:

a) "To say"

This is the simplest of its uses. It can be used either for direct speech or indirect (reported) speech:

Баатар "Өнөөдөр ирнэ" гэсэн.

Baatar said "I will come today".

Баатар өнөөдөр ирнэ гэсэн.

Baatar said he would come today.

It can also be used for speaking of another person or of oneself:

Ганболд "Баатар өнөөдөр ирнэ" гэсэн.

"Baatar will come today," said Ganbold.

When used for speaking of another person or of oneself in indirect or reported speech, then we have a sentence with a main and a subordinate clause. The subject of the main verb, рэх, goes in the nominative as usual, and the subject of the subordinate (reported) verb goes in the accusative, as you will remember was the case with sentences involving "when".

Ганболд Баатарыг өнөөдөр ирнэ гэсэн.

Ganbold said that Baatar would come today.

Where the subject of the subordinate verb is the speaker him or herself, the reflexive pronoun өөрөө (self) is used:

Ганболд өөрийгөө өнөөдөр ирнэ гэсэн.

Ganbold said that he would come today.

The verb of the reported speech might also have to be in the accusative, as it can itself be treated as a noun:

Хүү ээжээсээ "Хоол байна уу" гэж асуув.

The lad asked his mother, "is there any food".

Хүү ээжээсээ хоол байгаа үгүйг асуув.

The lad asked his mother if there was any food.

The verb is often in the present participle, as an auxiliary, with another verb involving the idea of speaking:

Тэр "Сайн байна уу?" гэж асуусан.

Ху ыйшб ЯХүц йжу нүгЮю

Би "Сайн, сайн" гэж хариулсан.

"Fine, fine," I answered.

"Энэ нь сайн" гэж би хэлсэн.

"This is a good one," I said.

b) Giving a name

When used for naming someone or something, the habitual present suffix -дар⁴ is used:

Би Жон гэдэг хүн.	My name is John.
Намайг Жон гэдэг.	My name is (lit. they call me) John.
Дорж гэдэг хүн.	A man called (lit. a man they call) Dorj.
Дорж гэдэг нэртэй хүн.	A man called (lit. a man with a name called) Dorj.
Чамайг хэн гэдэг вэ?	What is your name (informal)?
Чиний нэрийг хэн гэдэг вэ?	What is your name (informal)?
Таныг хэн гэдэг вэ?	What is your name (formal)?
Таны алдрыг хэн гэдэг вэ?	What is your name (honorific)?
Миний нэрийг Базар гэдэг.	My name is Bazar.

Remember that the word алдар is purely honorific and only used to ask another's name. You never say миний алдар...гэдэг.

The pattern can be used for things as well as for people:

-Энийг юу гэдэг вэ?	What is this called?
-Энийг хуушуур гэдэг.	This is called a huushuur.

c) Expressing intention

The verb can also be used to describe one's intention to do something, as though you were saying to your self that you might do something:

Би өнөө орой танайд очих гэсэн юм.	I thought I'd visit you this evening.
Дараа нь уулзах гэсэн юм.	I thought we could meet later.
Би гэргээ харих гэж байна.	I'm just about to go home.

Note that in the final example, where the рэх is in the present continuous, the meaning changes to 'just about to'. Although the verb indicates thought, it can be used for inanimate objects as well:

Гал тэрэг явах гэж байна.	The train is about to leave.
---------------------------	------------------------------

3) "In order to"

Mongolian has two ways of expressing the idea of the English "in order to...". One is to use the perfective converb of the verb we looked at above, гэх:

Чамтай уулзах гээд ирлээ.	I came to meet you.
Талх авах гээд дэлгүүрт очсон.	He went into the shop to buy bread.

Another way is to use the instrumental on the infinitive form of the verb:

Чамтай уулзахаар ирлээ.

I came to meet you.

Талх авахаар дэлгүүрт очсон.

He went into the shop to buy bread.

In addition, there is a verb ending, -хлаар⁴. Properly speaking, this translates best as “when”, but is often ambiguous. The reflexive, or personal particles нь and so on should be used where necessary:

Тэр гарахлаараа дээлээ өмссөн.

He put his coat on to go out OR When he went out he put his coat on.

Here again we have the problem of no exact equivalents, but rather the niceties of style and translation. In other cases it is less ambiguous:

Чи явахлаараа энийг аваад яв.

Take this with you when you go.

4) "Because"

There are also several ways of expressing the idea of “because” in Mongolian. Some of them have been met in earlier grammatical constructions. You must remember that in two languages as different as English and Mongolian the distinctions between ideas like “when”, “because” and “if” are not necessarily going to be as strong in the one language as they are in the other. There is going to be some overlap. This has even happened between English and German. Remember that there is actually little difference between something like “if it rains” and “when it rains”. Here are some ways of saying “because” in Mongolian:

a) -аар⁴/болохоор. This can be used in most situations:

Түүнийг унтаж байсан болохоор би явсан.

I left because he was asleep.

Түүнийг утасдахаар нь би очсон.

I went because(/when) he phoned.

b) гээд. In this case, “because” is a way of translating without using “in order to”:

Би унтах гээд гэртээ харьсан.

I went home because I wanted to sleep
OR I went home (in order) to sleep.

-Чи яагаад ирсэн бэ?

Why did you come?

-Тантай уулзах гээд ирсэн.

I came because I wanted to meet you.
OR I came to meet you.

c) яагаад гэвэл. This might literally be translated as “to say why”. It can be used in the following way:

-Чи яагаад ирсэн бэ?

Why did you come?

-Яагаад гэвэл, тантай уулзах гэсэн.

Because I wanted to meet you.

-Яагаад ирсэн бэ гэвэл, тантай уулзах гэсэн.

I came because I wanted to meet you.

d) учраас. This can be used instead of болохоор. It is the ablative of the word учир meaning “reason” or “cause” and so could be literally translated as “from the reason (that)”, or more figuratively as “on account of”:

Чамайг ирсэн учраас би их баярлаж байна. Because you’ve come I’m very happy
OR I’m very happy (that) you’ve come.

In any one instance, any one of the above constructions may not be suitable. In general, if the subjects of the two halves are the same, then any construction can be used. If they are different, then the гээд construction should be avoided.

One subject:

He got a ticket to go to (because he was going to/wanted to go to) Ulaanbaatar.

Тэр Улаанбаатарт очихоор (тэр) билет авсан.

Улаанбаатарт очих гээд билет авсан.

Улаанбаатарт очих гэсэн болохоор билет авсан.

Улаанбаатарт очих учраас билет авсан.

Яагаад билет авсан бэ гэвэл, Улаанбаатарт очих гэсэн.

Different subjects:

Because you’re going I shall go too.

Чамайг явах болохоор би ч бас явна.

Чи явах гэж байгаа учраас би ч бас явна.

Намайг яагаад явах болсон бэ гэвэл, чи явах гэж байна.

Finally, there is a colloquial construction never to be used in formal spoken or written circumstances, using юм and the second person particle чинь. This is used in the following way:

Чи очсон юм чинь, би очоогүй.

You went, so I didn’t

Үнэтэй юм чинь би аваагүй.

I didn’t buy it because it was expensive

5) Past tenses -жээ/чээ, -чих

These past tense endings are also of the short or immediate past. Neither of them are affected by the vowel harmony, but the first will change between -жээ and -чээ depending on the verb stem and following the same rules as for the present participle as described in Chapter 2. It is used for an event recently occurred of which the speaker has only now become aware:

Тэр яв**жээ**.

He has only just gone (or so it seems).

Баатар ир**жээ**.

Baatar has just come (I see).

When used in a question, the double vowel is dropped before the yy²:

-Баатар яв**ж** уу?

Has Baatar gone?

-Явжээ.

Yes, he has.

The -чих ending does not have any connotations of something of which one has only just become aware. Instead, it is used for events which occurred rapidly, and can be seen as being like the English “up” and “down”. The vowel does not change with the vowel harmony, nor does the initial ч ever change according to the verb stem. It can be used with other past tense endings, which follow the -чих:

Тэд нар хоолоо идчихсэн.

They ate their food up.

Тэр суучихав.

He sat down.

Тэр явчихжээ

He has gone.

Би тамхигүй болчихлоо.

I’ve just run out of cigarettes.

It can also be used with the perfective converb (“then”) in a compound verb sentence:

Бид уучихаад гарсан.

We drank up and left.

It can also be used for the imperative, but only with people with whom you are on familiar and easy terms:

Хоолоо идчих!

Eat up!

Суучих!

Sit down!

DRILIS

i) Place the pyu/lyu^2 suffix after the word in brackets. Don’t forget the vowel harmony, reflexive or possessive particles that may be necessary:

EXAMPLE:

Бид (Улаанбаатар) гарав.

Бид Улаанбаатар луу гарав.

We set off for Ulaanbaatar.

a) Тэр (би) ирсэн.

b) Чи өнөө орой (Ганболд) утасдах уу?

c) Тэд нар (Богд уул) явсан.

d) Энэ тэрэг Улаанбаатараас (Москва) явна.

e) Бид одоо (гэр) явж байна.

f) Циркээс (манайх) явахад амархан.

g) -Энэ автобус (Их сургууль) явах уу?

h) -Үгүй, (Их дэлгүүр) явдаг.

ii) Change the following from direct to indirect speech. Remember the accusative:

EXAMPLE:

Баатар “Ирнэ” гэсэн.

Baatar said “I shall come”.

Баатар өөрийгөө ирнэ гэсэн.

Baatar said that he would come.

- a) Аав нь хүүгээсээ "Өнөөдөр сургуульдаа явах уу?" гэж асуув.
- b) Хүү нь "Сургуульдаа явна" гэж хариулсан.
- c) Баатар "За, явлаа" гэж хэлэв.
- d) Цэнд "Долгор өвчтэй байна" гэсэн.

iii) Express in other ways the following questions and sentences involving names:

EXAMPLE:

Намайг Дорж гэдэг.

My name is Dorj.

Миний нэрийг Дорж гэдэг.

- a) Таны алдрыг хэн гэдэг вэ?
- b) Миний нэрийг Баатар гэдэг.
- c) Таныг хэн гэдэг вэ?
- d) Намайг Нямдорж гэдэг.

iv) In the following sentences, change the underlined verb to one expressing intention, using гэх:

EXAMPLE:

Би гарна.

I shall go out.

Би гарах гэж байна.

I'm thinking of going out.

Баатар ирсэн.

Baatar came.

Баатар ирэх гэсэн.

Baatar was thinking of coming.

- a) Би найзтайгаа хамт явна.
- b) Өнөө өглөө Их дэлгүүрт очсон.
- c) Маргааш гэртээ сууж номоо уншина.
- d) Өрөөнд нь очоод даргатайгаа уулзсан.
- e) Одоо завтай байгаа учраас амарна.
- f) Галт тэрэг одоо явлаа!
- g) -Чи одоо юу хийх вэ?
- h) -Одоо найз руугаа утасдана.

v) Write out the following sentences twice, putting the verb in brackets into the correct "in order to" forms discussed above:

EXAMPLE:

Дулгүүрээр (явах) гарсан.

Дэлгүүрээр явах гээд гарсан.

Дэлгүүрээр явахаар гарсан.

- a) Даргатайгаа (уулзах) өрөөнд нь очсон.
- b) Цэцэрлэгт (очих) билет авсан.

- с) Юм (авах) дэлгүүрээр явсан.
- д) Энэ номыг (унших) дэлгүүрээс авсан.
- е) Их сургууль руу (явах) автобусанд суусан.
- ф) Баян (болох) ажилд орсон.
- г) Циркэд (очих) билет авсан.
- h) Айраг (уух) малчны гэрт орсон.

vi) Join the following sets of two sentences using one of the four “because” constructions discussed above. Remember that one of them may not be suitable:

EXAMPLE:

Бид нар Доржийг хүлээж байна. Гарахгүй.

Бид нар Доржийг хүлээж байгаа болохоор гарахгүй.

Бид нар Доржийг хүлээх гээд гарахгүй байна.

Яагаад гарахгүй байна вэ гэвэл, бид нар Доржийг хүлээж байна.

Бид нар Доржийг хүлээж байгаа учраас гарахгүй.

- а) Мөнгө байхгүй гэж бодсон. Шнрээ аваагүй.
- б) Багш ирээгүй. Оюутнууд явлаа.
- с) Өнөөдөр их нартай байна. Малгай өмсөх ёстой.
- д) Өнөөдөр их хүйтэн байна. Пальто өмсөх ёстой.
- е) Маргааш эрт босно. Одоо унтлаа.
- ф) Өнөөдөр ажил ихтэй байсан. Одоо амрах гэж байна.
- г) Тэр энд үргэлж ирээд байсан. Би түүнд “Битгий ир” гэсэн.
- h) Тэр даалгавраа хийгээгүй. Багшийн асуултыг хариулж чадаагүй.

vii) In the following sentences, change the straight past to the short past discussed in this chapter:

EXAMPLE:

Баатар ирсэн.

Baatar came.

Баатар иржээ.

Baatar has just come.

- а) -Баатар явсан уу?
- б) -Явсан.
- с) Танай ээж чамайг байхгүй гэсэн.
- д) Хөөе, миний мөнгө байхгүй болсон.

EXERCISES

a) Answer the questions as they apply to you:

1. Таны алдрыг хэн гэдэг вэ?
2. Та Монголд очиж үзсэн үү?
3. Монголд очих гээд, юу юу хийсэн бэ?
4. Айраг ууж үзсэн үү?
5. Бууз идэж үзсэн үү?

6. Морь унаж: үзсэн үү?
7. Өнөөдөр дэлгүүрээр явсан уу?
8. Юу юу авах гэсэн бэ?
9. Та яагаад монгол хэл сурч байна вэ?
10. Монгол хэл хэцүү байна уу?

b) Translate from English into Mongolian:

1. -Have you ever tried huushuur?
2. -Yes, I have. They were very tasty.
3. -Why did you try huushuur?
4. -I wanted to see what they were like.
5. It is cold today so I shall wear a coat.
6. Mother is ill so I shall have to cook.
7. Baatar said he was not coming so we shan't wait.
8. Dolgor said that Tsend was ill and so won't come.
9. -Why are you wearing that big hat?
10. -Because it is very sunny today.

c) Translate from Mongolian into English:

1. Хүү нь багш хэлээгүй учраас номоо уншаагүй гэлээ.
2. Ганболд өөрийгөө өвчтэй болохоор архи уухгүй гэв.
3. Өвөл болохлоор дулаахан хувцас өмсөх хэрэгтэй.
4. -Чи яагаад миний хоолыг идсэн бэ?
5. -Ямар байна гэж үзэх гээд.
6. -Энэ автобус хаашаа явах вэ?
7. -Их дэлгүүр дүү явна. Одоо явах гэж байна, суухгүй юу?
8. -Миний хүү, найз чинь ирж үү?
9. -Нржээ!
10. Би цай чанах гэж байна. Уух уу?

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

алдар	aldar	name (hon.)
учир	uchir	reason
учраас	uchraas	because
унта-(унтах)	untah	to sleep
Москва	Moskva	Moscow
нар(-ан)	nar(-an)	sun
нартай	nartai	sunny
пальто	pal'to	coat, overcoat
хариул-(хариулах)	hariulah	to answer
асуулт	asuult	question

баян	bayan	rich, wealthy
хэрэгтэй	heregtei	necessary, need to
хаашаа	haashaa	where to?
үргэлж	ürgelj	often
цай чанах	tsai chanah	to make tea
юм чинь	yum chin'	because

CHAPTER TEN

TEXT

АЙЛД ОЧИВ

Билл Жаргалсайхан гэдэг охиныг таньдаг. Өнөө орой энэ танил айлдаа очно. "Орой буцаж ирэхэд хүйтэн болж магадгүй. Тийм болохоор пальтогоо өмөсч, ороолтоо зүүх хэрэгтэй" гэж бодоод пальтогоо өмөсч, ороолтоо ороогоод байрнаасаа гарч, танил айлдаа очив.

Жаргалсайханы ээжийн алдрыг Цэцмаа гэдэг. Билл тэдний гэрт ороод түүнтэй "Сайн байна уу, Цэцмаа гуай, таны бие сайн уу?" гэж мэндлэв.

"Сайн, сайн. Чиний бие сайн уу?"

"Сайн".

"Сурлага өндөр үү?"

"Өндөр. Таны ажил сайн уу?"

"Сайн. Чи их морь сайтай яваа юм байна. Би сая хуушуур хийж дууслаа. Чи хуушуурт дуртай биз дээ?"

"Дуртай байлгүй яах вэ!"

"За, тэгвэл гадуур хувцсаа тайлаад тэр өрөөнд ороорой".

Билл хувцсаа тайлаад нөгөө өрөөнд оров. Тэгээд:

"Сайн байна уу, Жаргал аа? аа? Чи яасан их ажилтай сууж байна вэ?" гэв.

"Сайн. Сайн уу? Би маргаашийнхаа хичээлд бэлтгэж байна. Тэгэхгүй бол багш асууж магадгүй. Заасан хичээлийг нь мэдэхгүй бол болохгүй".

Ширээн дээр, Жаргалсайханы номын хажууд нэг уран зураг, бас нэг гэрэл зураг байв. Билл тэр гэрэл зургийг хараад: "Энэ танай эгчийн зураг мөн үү?" гэж асуув.

"Мөн, мөн. Чи яаж мэдээ вэ?"

"Чамтай их төстэй байхаар нь би тэгж бодсон юм. Хажууд нь байгаа зургийг хэн зурсан бэ?"

"Манай эгч зурсан юм. Монгол малчны амьдрал, саруул сайхан тал нутаг, таван хошуу мал бүгд багтсан байгаа биз?"

"Тийм юм шиг байна. Таван хошуу малд юу юу ордог юм бэ?"

"Хонь, ямаа, үхэр, адуу, тэмээ ордог."

Жаргалсайханы өрөөний хаалга онгойж, ээж нь таваг дүүрэн хуушуур, данх дүүрэн сүүтэй цай авчирлаа.

"За, хүүхдүүд ээ, хоолоо ид, цай уу! Өлөсч байгаа байлгүй"

Comprehension

Мөнгө байвал ав.

If you've got the money, buy it.

Түүнийг ирвэл би явна.

If he comes, I shall go.

Чамайг явахгүй бод би ч бас явахгүй.

If you don't go, neither shall I.

Би бол англи хүн.

I am English.

Би ажлаа хийсэн.	I have done my work.
Хэн ингэсэн бэ?	Who did this?
Чи яасан (бэ)?	What have you done?
Чи яасан (бэ)?	What's the matter with you?
-Чи хөдөө явсан уу?	Have you been to the countryside?
-Тэгсэн.	I have.

VOCABULARY

айл	ail	home, family, house, household
жаргал	jargal	happiness
амар	amar	peace
тани-(таних)	tanih	to know (a person)
буца-(буцах)	butsah	to return, go/come back
хүйтэн	xüiteng	cold
зүү-(зүүх)	züüh	to wear (hanging on)
бодо-(бодох)	bodoh	to think
ороолт	oroolt	scarf
ороо-(ороох)	orooh	to wrap around, roll up
танил	tanil	friend, acquaintance
гуай	guai	Mr, Mrs, form of address
сурлага	surlaga	study, studies
дуртай	durtai	to like (+dat)
яа-(яах)	yaah	to do what?, how to do?
тэгэ-(тэгэх)	tegeh	to do that, do like that, do that way
морь сайтай	mor' saital	lit. having good horses. Used of people who arrive at fortunate times, e.g. meals. Not always ironic or sarcastic, but can be.
хуушуур	huushuur	huushuur, a kind of fried stuffed pancake
гадуур	gaduur	outer, outside
тайл-(тайлах)	tailah	to take off (clothes)
бэлтгэ-(бэлтгэх)	beltgeh	to prepare
тави-(тавих)	taviih	to put
хажууд	hajuud	(postposition) beside

зураг	zurag	picture
уран зураг	urang zurag	painted/drawn picture
гэрэл зураг	gerel zurag	photograph
төстэй	töstei	similar
юм	yum	(copula) be
саруул	saruul	vast; bright
нутаг	nutag	land, homeland
хошуу	hoshuu	(here) kind, sort
таван хошуу мал	tavang hoshuu mal	the Five Kinds of Animals, the five animals herded by the Mongols: horses, sheep, cattle, camels and goats.
хөдөө(-н)	hödöö	countryside
багта- (багтах)	bagtah	to fit, include, contain
адуу(-н)	aduu(-n)	horse
тэмээ(-н)	temee(-n)	camel
ямаа(-н)	yumaan(-n)	goat
хаалга	haalaga	door
онгой-(онгойх)	onggoih	to open (door, window)
таваг	tavag	plate
дүүрэн	düüreng	full
данх	dangh	kettle
сүү(-н)	süü(-n)	milk
өлс-(өлсөх)	ölsöh	to feel/be hungry

GRAMMAR

1) The conditional

In a two-part statement containing the word “if”, the execution of one part of the statement is conditional upon the execution of the other part. So the conditional is the term used to describe a form of a verb expressing the idea of “if”. In a sentence like “if you pay me I’ll do it”, the doing is conditional upon the payment.

In Mongolian the conditional is shown by adding a suffix to the verb stem. This suffix is -бал/-вал⁴. The vowel changes according to the vowel harmony, and the first letter changes according to the same rules as the бэ/вэ question particle. So if the stem ends in -в, -л or -м then the conditional suffix will be -бал⁴; otherwise it will be -вал⁴.

When the subject of the subordinate part of the statement (the condition to be fulfilled first) is the same as that of the main part, then both go into the nominative, although one is usually omitted:

Би мөнгөтэй байвал авна.	If I've got the money I'll buy it.
Тэр өнөөдөр ирвэл чамтай уулзана.	If he comes today he'll see you.
Чи ирвэл найзтайгаа ир.	If you are coming, come with your friend.

If the subject of the subordinate part is different from that of the main part, then as in sentences with “when”, the subordinate subject becomes accusative:

Тэрийг ирвэл би явна.	If he's coming I'm going.
Миний найзыг байвал битгий ор.	If my friend's here, don't come in.

Where the conditional idea is a verb in the negative, or a verb in any tense other than the present-future, or a noun, then the particle бол or болбол is used instead of the verb inflection. This is in fact the conditional of the verb болох—to become—and a contraction of that. What we get then looks like:

Чамайг явахгүй бол би ч бас явахгүй.	If you don't go then neither shall I.
Чиний захиаг авсан болбол би чамд хэлэх байсан.	If I'd got your letter I'd have told you.
Болохгүй бол бүү яв.	If it's not possible, don't go.

This construction can also be used to express the idea of “to have to”, in a new and interesting way:

Явахгүй бол болохгүй.	(I) must go (lit. If I don't go it won't do).
-----------------------	---

2) бол as a subject marker

Note the following:

Би бол англи хүн.	I am English.
Чингис хаан бол агуу их хүн байсан.	Chinggis Khan was a very great man.

In the above sentences the subject of the sentence is marked by the word бол. The full form, болбол, can also be used. These particles emphasise and give extra weight to the subject. Only the subject, and a nominative, main subject at that, can be so marked, other words in other cases cannot. In such instances, the word бол could be translated as “as for”:

Би болбол хоолоо идээгүй.	As for me, I've not eaten.
Энэ ном бол их сайн.	This book is very good.

3) Different verbs for "to do"

Mongolian has different verbs for different aspects of "to do". Some of these we have met briefly in previous chapters. There are basically four of them, and they are:

хийх	to do (in general)
тэгэх	to do that, do like that
ингэх	to do this, do like this
ях	to do what, do how

Here are the different ways each one is used:

a) хийх. This is a general word for "to do". It is used for such things as doing work, doing anything where the "do" takes an object:

Чи даалгавраа хийсэн үү?	Have you done your homework?
Та миний дээлийг хийсэн үү?	Have you made my deel yet?

b) тэгэх. This basically means "to do like that, to do that, to do in that way". It can be in a question, answer one or answer a suggestion:

Хэн тэгсэн бэ?	Who did it?
-Чи хоолоо идсэн үү?	Have you eaten?
- Тэгсэн.	Yes (I have done).
-Дараа нь уулзах уу?	Shall we meet later?
-За, тэгье.	Yes, let's (do that).

c) ингэх. This verb basically means "to do this way, to do like this", and so can be seen as a compliment to тэгэх. It is used less frequently than тэгэх, which is the standard response. Here are some examples of its use:

Хэн ингэсэн бэ?	Who did this.
За, ингье. Долоон цагт уулзъя.	OK, let's do this. We'll meet at 7.

d) ях. This verb basically means "how to do, to do what". It is a question word in its own right, like хэн, юу and so on. Here are some examples of it in use:

Чи яасан бэ?	What have you done OR What has happened to you OR What is the matter with you?
Яасан сайн юм бэ!	How nice (what has happened that it is so nice)

All the above verbs can be used in compounds, either with each other (within limits—тэгэх and ингэх never go together) or with other verbs. Here are some examples to give you a better idea of how the verbs actually work:

-Чи яаж ирсэн бэ?	How did you come?
--------------------------	--------------------------

-Автобусаар ирсэн.	By bus.
-Чи автобусаар ирсэн үү?	Did you come by bus?
-Тэгсэн.	I did (so).
-Тэр яаж ярьдаг вэ?	How does he talk?
-Ингэж ярьдаг.	Like this (accompanied by an impression).
-Хэн тэгж хэлсэн бэ?	Who said so?
-Баатар тэгсэн.	Baatar did.

4) The copula

The word copula is used by people writing grammar books to describe a short word, with no inflexions, which goes at the end of the sentence and basically means is, are and so on. There are several of these in Mongolian. One of these is бий, which we have met before. Others are юм and мөн.

a) бий. This is used instead of байна or байгаа, and has been described before in Chapter Six:

Надад мөнгөн аяга бий.	I have a silver bowl.
Ганбаатар бий.	Ganbaatar is in.

b) мөн. This word also means “right” or “correct”. It can stand alone and replace the present/future of the verb “to be” in a question or a statement:

-Тэр хүн Баатар мөн үү?	Is that Baatar?
-Мөн, мөн.	Yes, that's right.

c) юм. This word can serve as a verb “to be” following an adjective. It too often follows a verb, including байх, in the infinitive, -сан⁴ past, or -аа⁴ continuous tense, and is also confirmatory, or even emphatic:

Би өнөөдөр сургуульдаа явсан юм.	I went to the school today.
Тэр дөрвөн ахтай юм.	He has four older brothers.
Би энэ долоо хоногт явах юм.	I shall go this week.

юм, especially with the addition of the -аа⁴ or other emphatic suffix, tends to be used in more colloquial contexts:

Дорж өнөөдөр ирэх юм аа.	Dorj will come today.
Энэ одоо надад маш их хэрэгтэй байгаа юм аа.	This really is very important to me.

It is also used in expressions of “either...or...” and “...or...”:

Энэ хэрэгтэй юм уу, хэрэггүй юм уу?	Do you need this or not?
-------------------------------------	--------------------------

Би яаж явах вэ? Галт тэргээр ч **юм уу**, машинаар ч **юм уу**, би мэдэхгүй. How I shall go, by train or by car, I don't know.

5) "Perhaps" and "probably"

There is actually very little difference between the meanings of these two terms in English and even less between their 'equivalents' in Mongolian. If it is at all possible to say which is which, then "perhaps" is байх аа, and "probably" is магадгүй. Probably. байх аа follows the verb in the infinitive if the meaning is present or future, and in the past if past:

Тэр ирэх байх аа .	Perhaps she will come.
Тэр явсан байх аа .	Perhaps he has gone.
Тийм байх аа .	Perhaps so.
Үгүй байх аа .	Probably not.

Магадгүй follows the present participle of a verb if the meaning is present or future, other verb tenses and other words have байж, the present participle of the verb байх, between them and the магадгүй:

Би маргааш явж магадгүй .	I shall probably go tomorrow.
-Кино дууссан уу?	Is the film over?
-Дууссан ч байж магадгүй .	It's probably over.
-Дууссан ч байж магадгүй ,	Maybe it's over,
дуусаагүй ч байж магадгүй .	maybe not.

6) "Of course"

This is expressed by dropping the infinitive ending of the verb and adding the suffix -лгүй, followed by the phrase яах вэ, so that тийм байлгүй яах вэ, "of course that's right", could be literally translated as "how should that not be so?":

-Өнөө орой гэртээ харих уу?	Are you going home this evening?
-Харилгүй яах вэ!	Of course I am!
-Сургуульдаа очих уу?	Are you going to school?
-Тэгэлгүй яах вэ!	Of course I am!
-Тэр хүн оюутан мөн үү?	Is he a student?
-Мөн байлгүй яах вэ!	Of course he is!
-Тэр хүн чиний найз уу?	Is that your friend?
-Тэгэлгүй яах вэ!	Yes, of course!

The яах вэ is often pronounced as if spelt яахав (yaahav). This pronunciation is more colloquial.

DRILLS

i) Join the two sentences using -бал⁴ to mean 'if':

EXAMPLE:

Би явна. Чи ч бас явах уу?

I'm going. Are you going too?

Намайг явбал чи ч бас явах уу?

If I go, will you go too?

- a) Би очно. Чи хүлээж байх уу?
- b) Сонин кино байна. Үзэх үү?
- c) Багш байхгүй. Гэртээ харья.
- d) Тэр ирнэ. Би явлаа.
- e) Машин авна. Мөнгө байхгүй болно.
- f) Одоо хичээлээ хийнэ. Маргааш ууланд гарья.
- g) Ханиад хүрнэ. Эмчид очно.

ii) Mark the subject of the following sentences with бол or болбол.:

EXAMPLE:

Тэр малгайг өмссөн.

(He) put on that hat.

Тэр бол малгай өмссөн.

He put on a hat.

- a) Дорж Цэцэгмааг хүлээж байна.
- b) Улаанбаатар сайхан хот юм.
- c) Би маргааш кино үзэхгүй.
- d) Тэр оюутан хичээлд сайн бэлтгэжээ.
- e) Манай ах олон малтай.
- f) Баатар морь сайн унадаг.
- g) Дорж хоол сайн хийж чаддаггүй.

iii) In the following questions and sentences, replace the English word in brackets with the right "to do" verb:

EXAMPLE:

Сургуульдаа (how) очдог вэ?

How do you get to school?

Сургуульдаа яаж очдог вэ?

- a) Хөөе, хар аа*, хэн (did this) бэ?
- b) Миний хүү, даалгавраа (done) үү?
- c) Өнөө орой манайд (how) ирсэн бэ?
- d) -Маргааш очих уу? -За, (let's do that).
- e) Баатар (why) (that) хэлсэн бэ?
- f) За, (let's do this), ажлын дараа уулзъя.

g) Өнөөдөр дээлээ (doing) дууслаа.

iv) In the following sentences, replace the idea of “of course” with “perhaps” or “probably”:

EXAMPLE:

Энэ зун Монголд очилгүй яах вэ!

Энэ зун Монголд очиж магадгүй (очих байх аа).

- a) Зун нь халуун байлгүй яах вэ!
- b) Өвөл нь хүйтэн байлгүй яах вэ!
- c) Пальто өмсөлгүй яах вэ!
- d) Ороолтоо зүүлгүй яах вэ!
- e) Хичээлд бэлтгэсэн байлгүй яах вэ!
- f) Ажил бүтэлгүй яах вэ!
- g) Базар ирсэн байлгүй яах вэ.
- h) Завтай бололгүй яах вэ.

v) In the following sentences, replace the idea of “perhaps” or “probably” with “of course”:

EXAMPLE:

Дорж ирэх байх аа.

Дорж ирэлгүй яах вэ!

- a) Өнөөдөр бороо орж магадгүй.
- b) Би өнөөдөр өвчтэй байна. Гарахгүй байх аа.
- c) Монгол хэл сурахад хэцүү биш байх аа.
- d) Миний найз хуушуурт дуртай ч байж магадгүй.
- e) Дорж гуай уурлана байх аа.
- f) Тэр өрөөндөө байхгүй байна. Гарсан байх аа.
- g) Сонин кино байна. Үзэж магадгүй.
- h) Чи юу ч мэдэхгүй байна. Бэлтгээгүй байх аа.

* хар аа=look; look here; look at this

EXERCISES

a) Answer the questions as they apply to you:

1. Чи одоо юу хийж байгаа юм бэ?
2. Өнөөдөр ажилдаа очсон уу, үгүй юү?
3. Өчигдөр ч бас тэгсэн үү?
4. Чи англи хүн мөн үү?
5. Чи ямар улсын хүн бэ?
6. Хичээлдээ явж яадаг юм бэ?
7. Өнөө орой яах гэсэн юм бэ?
8. Надтай хамт кинонд явах уу?

9. Өнөө орой чи үсээ угаах гэсэн, тийм ээ?

10. Үсээ яаж угаадаг юм бэ?

b) Translate from English into Mongolian:

1. -Did you go to school today?

2. -Of course I did.

3. I forgot to get the bread. Never mind.*

4. I've got no money! What shall I do?***

5. It will probably rain today, I think.

6. My work is done.

7. My boy, if you are good, I shall bring you a plate full of buuz.

8. Don't do that [bitgii], your father will be angry.

9. If it rains, let's not go out.

10. If you do it like this, it will be [=become] easier [=easy].

c) Translate from Mongolian into English:

1. Хичээлээ сайн сурвал ажил олоход амархан болно.

2. Хоол авахаа мартжээ. За, яах вэ, гуанзанд очъё.

3. Би мөнгөгүй болчихлоо, яана!

4. Дорж руу утасдъя. (Тэрийг) байвал очих уу?

5. Маргааш бороо орохгүй бөд хөдөө явъя. Тэгэх үү?

6. Би болбол англи хүн биш. Шотланд.

7. -Та өнөө орой завтай байх аа, тийм ээ?

8. -Тэгэлгүй яах вэ. Юу гэж?

9. -Энэ зураг дээр чи байна уу?

10. -Байлгүй яах вэ. Энэ би байна.

* За, яах вэ

** яана!

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

агуу	aguu	great (big)
бүтэ-(бүтэх)	büteh	to be completed, be finished
бороо(-н)	boroo(-n)	rain
бороо орох	boroo oroh	to rain
маш	mash	very
уур	uur	steam; anger
ууртай	uurtai	angry
үс(-эн)	üs(-en)	hair
угаа-(угаах)	ugaah	wash
гуанз	guangz	cafeteria
шотланд	shotland	Scottish; Scotland

CHAPTER ELEVEN

АРВАН НЭГДҮГЭЭР ХИЧЭЭЛ

TEXT

Үлгэр

Урьд нэг хүүтэй чавганц байжээ. Тэднийх ганц алаг үнээтэй юм байжээ. Тэр үнээнээс нь жил бүр нэг тугал гардаг, тэр тугалыг нь бяруу болохоор нь алж иддэг юмсанжээ.

Гэтэл нэг жил алаг тугал гэртээ Тэр тугалыг бяруу болохоор нь хүү:

-Ээж ээ, баруугаа алж идье хэмээсэнд эх нь:

-Хүү минь, идэж болохгүй. Чамд эхнэр авч өгөхөд үүнийг сүйд нь хэрэглэнэ хэмээжээ.

Гэтэл бас нэг охинтой ядуу чавганц байжээ Тэр чавганцын ганц охиныг алаг бяруугаараа сүйлж хүүдээ эхнэр болгон авч өгчээ. Хүү, охин хоёр айл болон амьдарч, удалгүй ээж нар нь нас барсан тул хоёулаа үлджээ.

Хүү нэгэн өдөр гараад ганц үнээгээ алж, элэг сэмжийг нь нэг хэрээнд өгчээ.

-Ээ, чи үнээнийхээ элэг сэмжийг юунд өгөв дөө! Ядуу бидэнд нэг хоёр шөнө идэж хоноход аятай байх билээ! гэж эхнэр нь зэмлэжээ.

To be continued...

Comprehension

Би чамайг иртэл энд байна.

I shall be here until you come.

Хоол болтол нэг шатардах уу?

Shall we play chess until the food is ready?

Намайг ортол, Дорж гарсан.

When I came in, Dorj was leaving.

Намайг ортол Дорж гарч ирээгүй л байв.

When I came in, Dorj had still not come out.

Зун болтол энд сууя.

Let's stay here until summer.

Би буузанд дуртай.

I like buuz.

Надад мөнгө хэрэгтэй.

I need money.

-Та нар хэдүүлээ явсан бэ?

How many of you went?

-Дөрвүүлээ явсан.

Four of us went.

-Чи хэдийг нь авсан бэ?

How many of them did you get?

-Хоёуланг нь авсан.

I got both of them.

Дөрөвдүгээр хичээл

Lesson four

Мянга есөн зуун ерэн таван оны наймдугаар сарын The twenty-sixth of August, nineteen
 хорин зургаан бол нэгдэх өдөр мөн. ninety-five is/was/will be a Monday.

VOCABULARY

Text

үлгэр	ülger	folk tale
урьд	ur'd	ago, previously, once upon time
чавганц	chavgants	old lady
ганц	gants	only one, single
алаг	alag	piebald
үнээ(-н)	ünee(-n)	cow (female)
бүр	bür	each, every
тугал	tugal	calf
бяруу	byaruu	two-year-old
ала-(алах)	alah	to kill
юмсан	yumsang	(here) was, were (past tense copula)
гэтэл	getel	but
хэмээ-(хэмээх)	hemeeh	to say (written form)
эхнэр	ehner	wife
сүй	süi	dowry, gifts to bride's family
хэрэглэ-(хэрэглэх)	heregleh	to use
ядуу	yaduu	poor
сүйлэ-(сүйлэх)	süileh	to get a wife for dowry
амьдар-(амьдрах)	am'drah	to live
удалгүй	udalgüi	soon, not long after
нас	nas	year of age
бара-(барах)	barah	to finish
нас барах	nas barah	to die, pass on
тул	tul	because
хоёул	hoyuul	both
үлдэ-(үлдэх)	üldeh	to stay behind, be left behind
элэг	eleg	liver
сэмж	semj	the fat around the gut

хэрээ(-н)	heree(-n)	crow
шөнө	shönö	night
аятай	ayatai	comfortable
билээ	bilee	was, were (past tense copula)
зэмлэ-(зэмлэх)	zemleh	to scold, chastise

Comprehension

шатар	shatar	chess
шатарда-(шатардах)	shatardah	to play chess
дуртай	durtai	like
хэрэгтэй	heregtei	need
мянга(-н)	myangga(-n)	thousand
сар	sar	month

GRAMMAR**1) "Until"**

The idea of "until" is conveyed in Mongolian by a suffix on the verb. Like the "-ing" and "then" that we met before, it is called a converb, and its proper name is the "terminal converb", because it implies the total termination of one action or state upon the commencement of another. The ending of this converb is -тал⁴, and it follows the verb stem with no further complications than the vowel harmony. The converb has various uses, which are as follows:

a) until. This is its main use and translates easily into the English as in these examples:

Би энийг хийж дуус**глаа** энд байна. I shall be here until I have finished it.

Тэр (эмэгтэй) мөнгөтэй бол**тлоо** юм авч чадахгүй. She can't buy anything until she gets some money.

When the subjects of the two parts of the sentence are the same, then both go into the nominative, except that as usual one or both may be omitted as being understood. The reflexive must also be used on the converb. When the subjects are different, however, and the subject of the subordinate clause is a person, then it must as usual be accusative. If the subordinate subject is inanimate, or an animal, then it should stay in the nominative:

Чамайг утасд**тал** би өрөөндөө байя. I shall be at home until you phone.

Намайг ирт**эл** иртэд чи хүлээж бай. Wait here until I come.

Цаас дуустал бич!

Write until you run out of paper (lit., until the paper finishes).

It should be noted that this rule is often broken.

b) when, while. This is a less used function of the converb, especially in the colloquial language, but is often found in written works. See the following examples:

Намайг ортол тэр гарсан.

He was going out **as** I was coming in.

Тэрийг очтол автобус явчихав.

The bus left **just as** he got there.

c) forming new words. Several new words are formed from this converb. One of these is гэтэл, from гэх, “to say”, and meaning “but”. Like the гэвч that we met before, this word can be thought of as meaning “having said that...”. It is also used in much the same way:

Би түүнийг ирнэ гэж бодсон. Гэтэл ирээгүй.

I thought he would come, but he didn't.

Another new word formed from this suffix is хүртэл, “until”, from the verb хүрэх—or to reach. It is used in the following way:

Монголд өвөл хүртэл суугаад Англидаа буцсан.

I stayed in Mongolia **until** winter then went back to England.

Берлин хүртэл галт тэргээр ясаад дараа нь энд нисч ирсэн.

I went **as far as** Berlin by train and then flew here.

The хүртэл can be used in place of the converb:

Түүнийг бичээд дуусах хүртэл би хүлээсэн.

I waited **until** he had finished writing.

2) Дуртай and хэрэгтэй

Both these words express an attitude toward a thing or an action. Both are formed from the commitative case, but sentences in which they are used are differently constructed:

a) дуртай. This is formed from the word дур, meaning “liking”, and translates roughly as “to like”. The subject of the sentence stays in the nominative and the object of desire goes into the dative:

Номд дуртай, би.

I like books.

Тэр хүн монгол хоолонд дуртай.

He likes Mongolian food.

In the above cases the construction could be literally translated as “I have (=am with) a liking for...”.

When used with verbs, the infinitive is used, with no dative:

Тэднийд очих дуртай, би.

I like going to their house.

Тэр хүн кино үзэх дуртай.

He likes to watch films.

b) хэрэгтэй. This translates as “need”, and when used with nouns the construction is the other way round from that of the дуртай. In other words, the subject of the English sentence goes into the dative (becoming an indirect object), and the object of desire remains nominative, becoming the subject of the Mongolian:

Надад хар харандаа **хэрэгтэй** байна.

I need a black pencil.

Түүнд жаахан мөнгө **хэрэгтэй** байна.

She needs a little money.

In the above cases the construction could be literally translated as “...is with need to me.”

When **хэрэгтэй** is used with verbs, the construction is the same as with дуртай, so that the verb remains in the basic infinitive and the subject of the English sentence stays in the basic nominative:

Би гэртээ харих **хэрэгтэй**.

I have to go home.

Тэр хүн талх авах **хэрэгтэй**.

She has to get some bread.

The negatives of these words are formed as usual by dropping the committative -тай and adding negative -гүй:

Би тэрэнд дургүй.

I don't like him.

Энэ ном надад хэрэггүй.

I don't need this book.

Би эмчид үзүүлэх дургүй.

I don't like going to the doctor.

Та энд суух хэрэггүй.

You shouldn't (mustn't) sit here.

3) "Both" and "all"

There is a suffix added to Mongolian numbers which indicates ‘all’ of that number, as in the English expressions “both of us”, “all four of them” and so on. This suffix is -уул² and fits onto the end of the number in this way:

нэг	нэг	one
хоёр	хоёул	both
гурав	гурвуул	all three
дөрөв	дөрвүүл	all four
тав	тавуул	all five
зургаа	зургуул	all six
долоо	долуул	all seven
найм	наймуул	all eight
ес	есүүл	all nine
арав	арвуул	all ten

and so on. When the number in this form constitutes part of the subject of the sentence, it always has the reflexive added at the end:

Бид хоёулаа явсан.

Both of us/we both went.

Тавуулаа тэнд байгаа.

All five of them are there.

When it is the object or in any other case than the nominative, then it adds the relevant case directly without the reflexive, but often followed by the particle нь to stress the “of them” idea:

Бид дөрвүүлэнтэй нь уулзсан.

We met all four of them.

Хоёр чихэр үлдсэн. Хоёуланг нь би идчихсэн.

There were two sweets left. I ate them both.

This format can also be used in questions:

-Танайхан хэдүүлээ вэ?

How many people are there in your family?

-Манайхан дөрвүүлээ. Аав, ээж, эгч бид дөрөв.

There four in my family, father, mother, my sister and myself.

The exception to all this of course is нэг -one. This takes form ганц—just one, alone:

Би ганцаараа явсан.

I went alone/by myself.

4) Ordinal numbers

Mongolian has two suffixes which make a cardinal (1, 2, 3, 4 etc.) number into an ordinal (1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th etc.) One of these is used for telling the day of the week, the other for telling the months and in daily usage in more general ways. We shall deal with general aspects of ordinal numbers here and keep dates and so on for the next grammar point below.

The general suffix for making ordinal numbers is -дугаар² and it fits onto the number in the following way:

нэг	нэгдүгээр	first
хоёр	хоёрдугаар	second
гурав	гүравдугаар	third
дөрөв	дөрөвдүгээр	fourth
тав	тавдугаар	fifth
зургаа	зургадугаар	sixth
долоо	долдугаар	seventh
найм	наймдугаар	eighth
ес	есдүгээр	ninth
арав	аравдугаар	tenth

хорь	хорьдугаар	twentieth
гучин дөрөв	гучин дөрөвдүгээр	thirty-fourth

and so on. As you can see from the above table, the suffix is added to the number without its n-stem. Ordinal numbers precede the nouns they qualify just like adjectives:

Тэр киног би өчигдөр хоёрдугаар удаагаа үзсэн. I saw that film for the second time yesterday.

Гуравдугаар боть Volume three

The word нэгдүгээр for “first” is actually quite rarely used. The word анх(-ан) is used more often instead:

Би анх удаа бууз идэж байна. I am eating buuz for the first time.

Тэнд очих анхны хүн. The first person to go there.

5) Days and dates

a) years. These days, the Mongols of both Mongolia and Inner Mongolia number years from the same point that we do, so that 1979 in Britain is 1979 in Mongolia. However, the number of the year is spelled out slightly differently. In English, we would give the year 1911 (the year of the secession of Outer Mongolia from the Manchu Empire and the formal end of Chinese rule in that part of the world) as “nineteen-eleven” or “nineteen hundred and eleven”. This is not necessarily what we would say if it were an ordinary number. In Mongolian the number of the year is given just as if it were an ordinary number, so that 1911 becomes “thousand nine hundred (and) eleven”, or мянга есөн зуун арван нэг. Here are some other years in full form in Mongolian:

мянга есөн зуун наян зургаа	1986
мянга есөн зуун ерэн долоо	1997
хоёр мянга	2000
мянга есөн зуун хорин нэг	1921

The last of these years, incidentally, is the date of the socialist revolution in Mongolia and the date of the establishment of the People’s Government.

Sometimes the word он or “year” is added to the end of the number:

мянга есөн зуун хорин дөрвөн он	the year 1924
мянга есөн зуун жаран гурван он	the year 1963

The word он is used for “year” in this enumerated, or at least January to December, sense, only. We have previously met the word жил, which covers the idea in all other senses, including a full 12-month, 365-day year from, for example, May to the following April:

жил бүр each year, every year

өнгөрсөн жил	last year
ирэх жил	next year
дараагийн жил	the coming year
хичээлийн жил	academic year
санхүүгийн жил	financial year

The following example demonstrates the difference between the two terms:

Ирэх жил ерэн есөн он.

Next year is '99.

There are also special terms for “last year” and the year before:

уржнан	the year before last
ноднин	last year

b) months. In modern Mongolian usage, the months are not named as they are in European languages, they are numbered as in China, Japan and so on. This is because the names of the months as we know them have significance only in European and Western culture (and little of that, these days). The calendar now adopted almost worldwide is not indigenous to places like China and Mongolia, so it makes little difference that the month August is named after the Roman Emperor Augustus, it is just called “the eighth month”.

As I mentioned above in the section on ordinal numbers, one system of counting in ordinals is used for the months, thus:

нэгдүгээр сар	January
хоёрдугаар сар	February
гүравдугаар сар	March
дөрөвдүгээр сар	April
тавдугаар сар	May
зургадугаар сар	June
долдугаар сар	July
наймдугаар сар	August
есдүгээр сар	September
аравдугаар сар	October
арван нэгдүгээр сар	November
арван хоёрдугаар сар	December

In the colloquial language, however, it is more common to use the simple n-stem form of the cardinal number:

нэг сар	January
---------	---------

зургаан сар	June
долоон сар	July
арван хоёр сар	December

Note that there is then no difference between арван сар—October, and арван сар—ten months. This can be very confusing.

Saying “in” a certain month means putting the dative on that month:

Арван сард Монголд очно. In October I shall go to Mongolia.

Хоёр сард буцаж ирнэ. I'll come back in February.

“From” one month “until” another takes the ablative and хүртэл:

Арван сараас хоёр сар хүртэл Монголд байна. From October to February I shall be in Mongolia.

When putting years on months we use the genitive on the year, using the word он:

Мянга есөн зуун ерэн оны найман сар. August 1990

Ирэх жилийн арван хоёр сараас дараагийн жилийн хоёр сар хүртэл. From December next year until February the year after.

Note that as a straight stem noun the word сар means “month” but as the n-stem noun сар(-ан) it means “moon”.

c) dates. The numbers of the dates of the month are given with the n-stem of that number intact:

-Өнөөдөр хэдэн бэ? What is the date today?

-Өнөөдөр арван гурван. Today is the 13th.

With months and dates, the month goes into the genitive:

-Өнөөдөр хэдэн сарын хэдэн бэ? What is the date today?

-Өнөөдөр арван сарын хорин. Today is the 20th of October.

On a date, that date goes into the dative:

-Чи хэзээ шинэ ажилдаа орох вэ? When do you start your new job?

-Энэ сарын хорин гурванд. On the 23rd of this month.

From one date to another, we use the ablative and хүртэл again:

Нэг сарын хориноос хоёр сарын арван хүртэл. From the 20th of January to the 10th of February

Putting years, months and dates together:

Би бол мянга есөн зуун жапан гурван оны дөрвөн сарын 9-д төрсөн. I was born on the 9th of April, 1963.

есөнд төрсөн.

Та төрсөн он, сар, өдрөө бичээрэй.

Please write down your year and date of birth.

You may have noticed from the last examples that like other Asian languages such as Chinese and Japanese, Mongolian counts down from the largest unit mentioned to the smallest. The order is thus the reverse of, for example, that of English.

d) days of the week. In a previous chapter we met the phrase *долоо хоног* for “week”. You will have realised that this means “seven days”, but that the *долоо* is missing the -n stem it should have when counting something. The point is that whereas *долоо хоног* is “week” in the way that we use the term, *долоон хоног* would only be “seven days” in the same way that *арван хоног* would be “ten days”.

There are two principal ways of giving the days of the week in Mongolian. One is to use another ordinal suffix, *дахь/дэх*:

нэгдэх өдөр	Monday
хоёрдахь өдөр	Tuesday
гуравдахь өдөр	Wednesday
дөрөвдэх өдөр	Thursday
тагдахь өдөр	Friday
хагас сайн өдөр	Saturday
бүтэн сайн өдөр	Sunday

Weekdays, then, are numbered from one to five, while Saturday is the “half good day” and Sunday is the “really good day”. There is also another way of naming the days of the week, which is to use the Tibetan names of certain stars and planets:

даваа гариг	Monday
мягмар гариг	Tuesday
лхагва гариг	Wednesday
пүрэв гариг	Thursday
баасан гариг	Friday
бямба гариг	Saturday
ням гариг	Sunday

Note that days of the week do not have capital letters in Mongolian.

The word *гариг* derives from the Tibetan for ‘star’, and can be dropped, so that both *даваа гариг* and *даваа* can stand for ‘Monday’. The names of these heavenly bodies as they come in the order of the days of the week are: Moon, Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, Venus, Saturn and Sun. All of them are also found as personal names for both boys and girls. The star names for the days of the week tend to be used for official purposes, on things

like timetables. The numbered days tend to be used more in daily life, but recently, with renewed interest in Mongolian culture, more people are using the star names again.

‘On’ a day of the week in the numbered system is expressed with no case ending:

Хоёрдахь өдөр танайд очъё. I shall come to your place on Tuesday.

Хагас сайн өдөр хөдөө явъя. Let’s go to the countryside on Saturday.

‘On’ a day of the week in the star system is expressed with the dative:

Даваа гаригт би гэртээ байхгүй. I shan’t be home on Monday.

Бямба гаригт кинонд явъя. Let’s go to the cinema on Saturday.

‘From’ a day of the week is expressed with the ablative in either system:

Би нэгдэх өдрөөс амарна. I’m on holiday from Monday.

Баасан гаригаас даваа гариг хүртэл хөдөө байна. I shall be in the countryside from Friday until Monday.

Questions about the days of the week can be asked in the following ways:

-Өнөөдөр хэддэх өдөр вэ? What day is it today?

-Өнөөдөр хагас сайн өдөр. Today is Saturday.

-Өнөөдөр ямар гариг вэ? What day is it today?

-Өнөөдөр бямба гариг. Today is Saturday.

The two systems are never mixed in the same sentence.

DRILLS

i) Join the following groups of sentences using the terminal -тал⁴ suffix:

EXAMPLE:

Чи ирнэ. Би хүлээнэ.

Чамайг иртэл би хүлээе. I shall wait until you come.

a) Хичээл дуусна. Ажиллах ёстой.

b) Дорж багш ирнэ. Орж болохгүй.

c) Би орсон. Оюутан гарсан.

d) Би уншиж дуусна. Та нар соисч бай.

e) Тэр утасдана. Би энд сууя.

f) Хоол иднэ. Өлөснө.

g) Банкинд очно. Мөнгөгүй байна.

ii) Change the following sentences from ‘like’ to ‘need’, making any other changes as may be necessary to the subject and object:

EXAMPLE:

Би мөнгөнд Дуртай.

I like money.

Надад мөнгө хэрэгтэй.

I need money.

- a) Би чамд дуртай.
- b) Би архинд дуртай.
- c) Миний хүү сурах дургүй.
- d) Би өрөөгөө цэвэрлэх дургүй.

iii) Change the following sentences from 'need' to 'like', again making any other changes as may be necessary:

EXAMPLE:

Би эм уух хэрэггүй.

I don't need to take any medicine.

Би эм уух дургүй.

I don't like taking medicine.

- a) Би банкинд очих хэрэгтэй.
- b) Тооны машинаар бодох хэрэгтэй.
- c) Утсаар ярих хэрэггүй, би.
- d) Тамхи надад хэрэггүй байна.

iv) In the following sentences, drop the noun qualified by the number and use the -уулаа² suffix to indicate 'all' of them:

EXAMPLES:

Дөрвөн хүн ирсэн.

Four people came.

Тэд дөрвүүлээ ирсэн.

All four of them came.

Тэр бид хоёр хамт хооллов.

Бид хоёулаа хамт хооллов.

We both ate together.

- a) Өнөөдөр арван хүнтэй уулзсан.
- b) Тэр долоон бууз идсэн.
- c) Аав, ээж, эгч бнд дөрөв кино үзсэн.
- d) Манай найман оюутан хичээлд орсон.
- e) Арван хичээлийг нь үзээд дууслаа.
- f) Хоёр найз над дээр ирсэн.
- g) Ээж зургаан үнээ саасан.
- h) Аав арван морио унаж үзсэн.

v) Put the figure in brackets into the correct ordinal number form:

EXAMPLE:

Бид (10) хичээлээ бас л үзээгүй байна.

Бид аравдугаар хичээлээ бас л үзээгүй байна.

We haven't done lesson ten yet.

- a) Би (10) сард Англидаа буцна.
- b) Чи миний монгол хэлний (4) оюутан.
- c) Өчигдөр (1) удаа монгол кино үзсэн.
- d) Монгол улсын (21) он бол (1931) он мөн.

vi) Write out the following years in full in Mongolian:

- a) 1945
- b) 1968
- c) 1745
- d) 1363
- e) 1066
- f) 1492
- g) 1996
- h) 1177

vii) Translate the following years and months into Mongolian:

EXAMPLE:

December 1960

Мянга есөн зуун жаран оны арван хоёр сар

- a) June 1940
- b) April 1975
- c) August 1990
- d) September 1911
- e) October 1917
- f) January 1785
- g) June 1789

viii) Write out the following groups of figures as years, months and days. They are in the British order (day-month-year), so remember that they will have to be inverted (year-month-day):

EXAMPLE:

7-7-77

Далан долоон оны долоон сарын долоон

- a) 13-8-12
- b) 9-8-90
- c) 15-10-87
- d) 4-3-12
- e) 10-2-43
- f) 17-10-17
- g) 29-8-96
- h) 5-8-1206

EXERCISES

a) Answer the questions as they apply to you:

1. Чи хэзээ төрсөн бэ?
2. Танайх хэдүүлээ байдаг юм бэ?
3. Чи одоо хэддүгээр хичээл үээж байгаа юм бэ?
4. Өнөөдөр хэддэх өдөр вэ?
5. Өнөөдөр хэдэн оны хэдэн сарын хэдэн бэ?
6. Чи архинд дуртай юу?
7. Чамд үзэг юм уу, харандаа юм уу, аль нэг нь байна уу?
8. Чи найзтай юу?
9. Чи хэзээнээс монгол хэл сурч эхлэсэн бэ?
10. Өчигдөр хэдэн байсан бэ?

b) Translate from English into Mongolian:

1. -When is your birthday?
2. -My birthday is on the fifteenth of March.
3. -(In) what year were you born?
4. -I was born in 1956.
5. -How many are there in your family?
6. -There are five of us.
7. -I saw a Mongolian film today for the first time.
8. -Did you like it?
9. -Yes, I did. It was good.
10. I have to meet you on the fifth of next month.

c) Translate from Mongolian into English:

1. -Таны төрсөн өдөр хэзээ билээ?
2. -Миний төрсөн өдөр өнгөрсөн долоо хоногт болсон,
3. арван сарын арван долоонд.
4. -Тэр чинь хэддэх өдөр байлаа?
5. -Тавдахь өдөр байсан.
6. -Бэлэг их авсан уу? Юу юу авсан бэ?
7. -Ээж минь гуравдахь удаагаа оймс өгч байна.
8. Оймс надад бүр хэрэггүй.
9. Танайх хэдүүлээ юм бэ?
10. -Манайх арвуулаа.

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

нис-(нисэх)	niseh	to fly
жаахан	jaahang	a little
чихэр	chiher	sugar, sweets
боть	bot'	volume
анх(-ан)	angh(-an)	first

ноднин	nodning	last year
санхүү	sanghüü	treasury; financial
төр-(төрөх)	töröh	to be born
сонс-(сонсох)	sonsoh	to hear, listen to
тоо(-н)	too(-n)	number
тооны машин	tooni mashin	calculator
тоо бодох	too bodoh	calculate
хайр	hair	love
хайртай	hairtai	in love with (+dat)
өнгөр-өнгөрөх	önggöröh	to pass, elapse
оймс	oims	sock(s)
бүр	bür	at all

CHAPTER TWELVE

АРВАН ХОЁРДУГААР ХИЧЭЭЛ

TEXT

Тэр хоёр үнээнийхээ махаар хэдэн хоног амьдарч байгаад мах нь барагдахаар хүү тарвага зурам алахаар явжээ.

Нэгэн өдөр хүү нэг их модтой ууланд цангаж, өлөсч явжээ. Чингээд зурам хайж явсаар нэгэн модон дээр шувууны үүр байхыг харж, "Өндөг авч, шарж идье" гэж бодож байтал нэгэн хэрээ нисч ирээд хүний хэлээр:

-Ээ, хүү, чи сайн явж байна уу? Урьд намайг нэг их өлөсч явахад чи надад тус хүргэсэн юм. Тийнхүүд чамд хоёр удаа тус хүргье гэж бодсон юмсан. Одоо чи намайг харж бай. Миний нисээд буусан модны ёроолд очоод дорогш нь ухаарай. Чингэхэд нэг жижигхэн тогоо гарч ирнэ. Тэр тогоонд "Хоол унд бүт!" гэхээр бүмдэг юм. Чи түүнийг аваад яв. Хэрэв дахиад ядрах юм бол над дээр нэг ирээрэй дээ хэмээгээд нисч нэгэн бүдүүн модны мөчир дээр очиж суужээ.

Хүү тэр модны дэргэд ирж газар ухвал нэг жижигхэн тогоо гарчээ. "Энэ тогоонд мах, хоол бүх!" хэмээсэнд уур савссан халуун хоол болжээ...

To be continued...

Comprehension

Би чамайг сонсохгүй.

I won't listen to you.

Чи надад сонсогдохгүй байна.

I can't hear you.

Тэр хүн цагдаад баригджээ.

He was arrested by the police.

Тэр хүн эндээс хол байна,
надад үзэгдэхгүй байна.

He is a long way away, I
I can't see him.

Монгол улсыг 1911 онд байгуулсан.

The Mongolian state was founded in 1911.

Тэр хүн Дорж шиг байна.

That man looks like Dorj.

Чи ядарсан юм шиг байна.

You look tired.

Энэ машин эвдэрхий юм шиг харагдаж байна.

This car looks like it's broken down.

А: -Миний орхисон нөгөө ном тэнд байж л
байна уу?

Is the book I left there still there?

Б: -Чиний уншиж байсан ном уу?

What, the one you were reading?

А: -Тийм, нөгөө чамд үзүүлж байсан нь.

Yes, the one which I showed you.

Б: -Байгаа байх аа.

I think perhaps it is.

А: -Ажилд очихоосоо өмнө авчраад өгөхгүй юу?	Can you bring it before you go to work?
Б: -Харин ээ, ажил дууссан хойно болохгүй юү?	Hm, I don't know. Can I bring it after work?
А: -Ажлын дараа кинонд явах ёстой юмсан.	After work I am going to the cinema.
Б: -Чи кино үзсээр л байна аа! Би маргааш аваачиж өгье.	You're always going to the cinema. I'll bring it tomorrow.

VOCABULARY**Text**

барагда-(барагдах)	baragdah	to be finished
тарвага(-н)	tarvaga(-n)	marmot, prairie dog
зурам	zuram	ground squirrel
цанга-(цангах)	tsanggah	to be thirsty
чингэ-(чингэх)	chinggeh	to do this, do like this (written)
хай-(хайх)	haih	to look for
шувуу(-н)	shuvuu	bird
үүр	üür	nest
өндөг(-өн)	öndög(ön)	egg
тус	tus	help
тийнхүү	tiinhüü	like that
тийнхүүд	tiinhüüd	therefore
юмсан	yumsang	(here) want to, intend to
ёроол	yorool	base, bottom
дорогш	dorogsh	downwards
уха-(ухах)	uhah	to dig
унд	und	drink
газар	gazar	ground
хэрэв	herev	if
ядра-(ядрах)	yadrah	to be tired
даа ⁴	daa ⁴	emphatic particle
бүдүүн	büdüün	fat, thick
мөчир	möchir	branch

дэргэд	derged	beside
уур	uur	steam
савса-(савсах)	savsah	to rise, puff (steam, smoke, etc)

Comprehension

цагдаа	tsagdaa	police
барь-(барих)	barih	to hold
баригда-(баригдах)	barigdah	to be held, be arrested
шиг	shig	like, similar to
харагда-(харагдах)	haragdah	to be seen
харин ээ	harin ee	hm, I don't know

GRAMMAR**1) The passive**

The passive is a form of verbs which Mongolian has in common with many languages, including English. Grammarians have it known as a “voice”, since it describes things from the point of view of the actor. It is called the passive because, to put it as simply as possible, the actor is passive in the action, things happen to him or her rather than the actor actively doing something for him or herself. In an English sentence like “he was seen sneaking out of school”, the “sneak” bit is active because the character is doing it by himself and for himself. The “see” bit, however, is passive, because it has nothing to do with the character, rather it is something which happens to him without his permission, and it is someone else who is actively doing the seeing. This example would translate into Mongolian like this:

Тэр хүн ангиасаа сэмхэн гарч яваа нь харагдсан. As he crept out of class he was seen.

The passive is formed (like the causative) by adding a second stem to the main stem of a verb, to which tense and other endings can be added. This is usually a -гд-:

алах	kill	алагдах	be killed
барих	catch	баригдах	be captured
мэдэх	know	мэдэгдэх	be known
сонсох	hear	сонсогдох	be heard
бодох	think	бодогдох	be thought (of)

A few verbs have passive stems in -т- or -д-:

авах	take	автах	be taken
------	------	-------	----------

олох	find	олдох	be found
and sometimes			
сонсох	hear	соисдох	be heard

Where we have the passive, we often also have the word ‘by’. For this Mongolian uses the dative, **not** the instrumental:

Тэр багшдаа харагдсан.	He was seen by the teacher.
Тэр тухай надад мэдэгдээгүй.	I was not informed [lit. it was not known to me] about that.

The passive in Mongolian is sometimes used where it is used in English, but sometimes where English uses the passive the Mongolian will not and vice versa. The rules are complex and can seem arbitrary. Basically it is used and avoided in the following ways:

a) passive in translation. Which is to say that where you would use the passive in English then you would use it in Mongolian, like in the example at the top of this section, or in the following examples:

Би тэрэнд харагджээ.	I was seen by him.
Би дандаа баригддаг.	I'm always getting arrested.
Бид ялсан, тэд ялагдсан.	We won, they lost (were defeated).

b) can. The Mongolian passive is often used to translate what we could express in English with the word ‘can’, although it does not cover all the uses of this word:

Надад санагдахгүй байна.	I can't remember (it isn't being thought of to me).
-Чамд сонсогдож байна уу?	Can you hear him?
-Сонсогдохгүй байна, харин үзэгдэж байна.	I can't hear him but I can see him.

In such cases, it would be incorrect to use чадах—‘can’. Би сонсч чадахгүй for ‘I can't hear’ would tend to mean that there was a physical impairment to hearing.

c) where not to use it. The passive is often used in English where there is an unspecified actor. For example, in the sentence ‘I was invited to a party’, it is not stated who has invited the speaker. Sentences like this in Mongolian do not use the passive, but the active, simply dropping the subject:

Намайг үдэшлэгт урьсан .	I was invited to a party.
Монгол улсыг 1911 онд байгуулсан .	Mongolia was founded in 1911.
Үзэгдэхгүй гарах гэсэн боловч намайг үзсэн .	I wanted to get out without being seen but someone saw me.

The passive is often replaced with the causative in cases where there can be said to be some kind of suffering:

Бил нэг морио чонол	One of our horses was taken by a wolf
---------------------	---------------------------------------

бaриулсан.	OR We lost a horse to a wolf (lit. we had a horse taken by a wolf).
Тэр нохойд уруулсан.	He was bitten by a dog.
Дорж машинд дайруулсан.	Dorj was hit by a car.

The implication is that one has ‘let oneself’ in for the problem.

In principle, it is possible to add passives to causative verbs and vice versa, in this manner:

үзэх	see
үзүүлэх	(caus.) cause to see, show
үзэгдэх	(pass.) be seen
үзүүлэгдэх	(caus./pass.) be caused to see, be shown (to someone)
үзэгдүүлэх	(pass./caus.) cause to be seen, be shown (something)

but this practice is rare and tends to be avoided except in official contexts.

2) Relative clauses

‘**The woman** who just came in **is wearing a hat**’, ‘**the man** I met yesterday **is here now**’ and ‘**the book** which I was reading **is on the table**’ are examples of sentences with relative clauses. They are often sentences with two parts, sometimes connected with the words ‘which’, ‘that’, ‘who’ or ‘whom’. One part of the sentence is called the main clause, and has the main verb, main subject and so on; the other part is called the subordinate clause. The main clause contains the most important information, and the main clauses extracted from the examples above would read: ‘**the woman is wearing a hat**’, ‘**the man is here now**’ and ‘**the book is on the table**’. The other parts of the sentence, which specify which woman, which man and which book, are less important.

Mongolian does not have a word for ‘which’, nor yet for these uses of the English words ‘who’ or ‘that’. So they are left out in the Mongolian.

There are two kinds of sentences with relative clauses: those with one subject and those with two. ‘The woman who just came in is wearing a hat’ is an example of such a sentence with the one subject. Because there are no equivalents in Mongolian for the which, that, or who, the whole of the subordinate clause, including the verb, becomes an adjective, and is placed before the main noun:

Сая орж ирсэн авгай малгайтай байна.	The woman who just came in is wearing a hat (lit. Just-came-in woman has a hat).
Чиний мөнгийг авсан хүн тэр байна.	That is the one who took your money (lit. Your money-took-person is him).

Where the subjects of the two clauses in English are different, then the subject of the subordinate clause is given in the genitive case, and again the subordinate clause behaves like an adjective, placed before the main noun:

<u>Миний өчигдөр уулзсан хүн</u> одоо энд байна.	The man (whom) I met yesterday is here now (lit. my met-yesterday-man is here now).
<u>Миний уншиж байсан ном хаана</u> байна вэ?	Where is the book (which) I was reading (lit. my was-reading book is where)?

What this means is that the sentences would translate literally as perhaps “my met man” and “my was-reading book”.

Here are a few more examples:

Миний бичсэн ном их сайн.	The book I wrote is very good.
Миний очих газарт хоол байхгүй.	There's no food where I'm going.
Чиний хийдэг хоол минийхээс сайн.	The food that you make is better than mine.

Sentences with relative clauses in English have two subjects. In the case of “the book I wrote is very good” these would be “I” and “the book”. In Mongolian, they have only one, which would be “ном”. The “миний бичсэн” bit can be seen only as an adjective that describes it. This would seem to make problems with cases in one or two of the above examples. If we broke them up into constituent parts, we would get:

Би өчигдөр хүнтэй уулзсан.	I met someone yesterday.
Тэр одоо энд байна.	He is here now.
Миний өчигдөр уулзсан хүн одоо энд байна.	

and:

Би нэг газарт очно.	I'm going somewhere.
Тэнд идэх юм байхгүй.	There is nothing to eat there.
Миний очих газарт идэх юм байхгүй.	

In the first of these examples, what becomes the subject of the complete sentence has a commitative (хүнтэй), and in the second, a dative (газарт), case ending. What happens to these cases when the word becomes a subject? They are just dropped.

Possessive adjectives are also used with certain verbs in the following way:

Миний бодоход, тэр ажлаасаа гарсан.	I think (to my way of thinking) he left his job.
Миний сонсоход, тэр хөөгдсөн.	I heard he was thrown out.
Миний үзэхэд, энэ огт хамаагүй.	As I see, it doesn't really matter.

3) "Before" and "after"

In several of the previous chapters, we have already met in the texts the words “дараа” for “after” and “өмнө” for “before”. These both take the genitive of what they qualify, be it verb or noun:

Ажлын дараа Дорж дээр очъё.	Let's go to Dorj's after work.
Намайг очихын өмнө тэр явчихжээ	He had gone before I got there.

These words can also be used for expressions of time, when the өмнө becomes the English “ago”:

Олон жилийн өмнө Монгол улс бол Богд хаантай байсан.	Many years ago Mongolia had a Holy Emperor.
Нэг, хоёр сарын дараа тэр мөнгөгүй болно.	After a month or two he will run out of money.

Other ways of saying “before” include the ablative өмнө:

Ажилд явахаасаа өмнө өглөөний хоолоо идэх ёстой.	Before I leave for work I've got to have my breakfast.
Багшийг ирэхээс өмнө яв!	Go before the teacher gets here!

Other ways of saying “after” include placing хойно after the idea in question or using the ablative with хойш:

Монголд очсон хойноо гурван сар суух гэсэн.	After entering Mongolia I was going to stay for three months.
Өнөө үдээс хойш дэлгүүрээр явъя.	Let's go shopping this afternoon.

Idioms and set phrases include:

үдээс хойш	afternoon
юуны өмнө	first of all

4) Continuous tense -саар⁴

Mongolian has another continuous tense, formed with a converb (atemporal) and байх or another verb. The converb is made by adding the ending -саар⁴ to the verb stem:

Тэр ярьсаар байна.	He keeps talking away.
Тэд ууланд явсаар цангаж, өлссөн.	As they went on into the mountains they got hungry and thirsty.
Тэр манайд ирсээр байна.	She keeps coming to our house.

The use and meaning of this construction are not wildly different from the -аад converb we met earlier.

5) Intentions, wishing and wanting

In various chapters so far we have met several different ways of expressing a wish, desire, liking or need for doing something. Here is a brief summary of them, with one new one introduced in the text for this chapter:

a) юмсан. In the vocabulary for the last chapter, this word was given as a past tense copula, meaning “was” or “were”. So it is, but it has other uses also. In the text for this chapter, it appears with the verb бодох -to think, is given in the vocabulary as meaning “want” or “intend to”. The two uses of this word are not entirely unrelated or illogical. In the previous chapter we also met the past tense ending -лаа⁴, which I explained then as being sometimes a past tense so immediate that it has not yet happened, although it definitely will very soon. This юмсан operates in much in same way. It is definitely a past tense, but is used for something that the speaker is definitely intending to do, an action that is in the future and at the planning stage, but which the speaker intends to put into the past as soon as possible. Even so, it should not be thought for this reason the word is used for some irksome or unpleasant task. Here are some examples showing юмсан in use:

Багшдаа бэлэг өгөх юмсан.	I want to get a present for my teacher.
Чамд туслах юмсан.	I want to help you.
Нэг өдөр Монгол явах юмсан.	I want to go to Mongolia one of these days.

b) хэрэгтэй. This was explained in the last chapter as “need”:

Талх авах хэрэгтэй.	I need to get some bread.
Номын санд очих хэрэгтэй.	I have to go the library.
Өнөөдөр ажилдаа очих хэрэггүй.	I don't have to go into work today.

c) дуртай. This was explained in the last chapter as “like to”:

Би кино үзэх дуртай.	I like to go to the pictures.
Ном унших дуртай.	I like to read.
Би тамхи татах, архи уух дуртай.	I like smoking and drinking.

d) ёстой. This is another new one. Like хэрэгтэй, it can be translated as “need to” or “necessary”, but it is perhaps a little stronger. It is the committative of the word ёц, which can mean “custom” or “law”:

Маргаашийн хичээлээс өмнө энэ номыг унших ёстой.	I have to read this book before class tomorrow.
Өнөө орой ажиллах ёстой.	I shall have to work late tonight.

It is perhaps in the negative that a clearer difference between хэрэгтэй and ёстой emerges. Хэрэггүй is more of a weaker “shouldn’t” or “don’t have to”, while ёсгүй is perhaps a stronger “must not”:

Чи өнөөдөр ажилдаа очих хэрэггүй юм уу?	Don’t you have to go to work today?
Чи архи уух ёсгүй.	You mustn’t drink.

e) гэх and гэж бодох. These too have been met in an earlier chapter. Both of them cover, among other things, the ideas of “thinking of” or “want to”:

Чамтай уулзах гээд ирлээ.	I came to meet you.
Би хоол идэх гэсэн юм.	I was wanting to have something to eat.
Бид архи уух гэж байна.	We’re just going to have something to drink.
Би мотоцикль авъя гэж бодож байна.	I’m thinking of getting a motorbike.

f) the voluntative. An old one that we had weeks ago:

Хөдөө явъя!	Let’s go to the countryside!
Кинонд явъя!	Let’s go to the picture!
За, үзье.	OK, let’s have a look.

g) -маар⁴ This suffix is in very common daily use, in both positive and negative forms. It is added onto the verb stem in the usual four vowel variants, and means simply, want. Here are some examples of it in use:

Би гэртээ харимаар байна.	I want to go home.
Би хоол идмээр байна.	I want something to eat.
Тэр кино үзмээр байсан.	She wanted to see a film.

6) "Like" (шиг)

In chapter ten we had the word төстэй for “like” as in “similar”. Төсгүй would be “unlike”. Another word for “like” is шиг. This word is used in the following ways:

a) with nouns. When used with a noun, the шиг simply follows that noun:

Долгор шиг нэг эмэгтэй.	A woman like Dolgor.
Монгол бол Англи шиг биш .	Mongolia is not like England.
Энэ чулуу өндөг шиг юм.	This stone looks like an egg.

The шиг follows the noun it qualifies and any verb comes after, so that the whole construction behaves like an adverb.

The шиг can follow a pronoun, where it takes the oblique stem:

Чам шиг нэг хүн.	Someone like you.
------------------	-------------------

Түүн шиг ярих хэрэггүй.

You shouldn't talk like him.

b) with verbs and adjectives. When it is used with a verb or an adjective, the шиг takes the copula юм:

Өнөөдөр бороо орох юм шиг байна.

It looks like rain today.

Тэр явсан юм шиг байна.

It looks like he's gone.

Энэ нь хэрэгтэй юм шиг байна.

This one looks like it might be needed.

Шиг constructions are often used with the passive of the verb харах -to see:

Би бол түүн шиг харагддаггүй.

I don't look like him. (lit. I am not seen like him).

Тэр явсан юм шиг харагдаж байна.

It looks like he's gone/He seems to have gone.

DRILLS

i) Put the following active sentences into passive. Remember to change the subject, and that the meaning may change:

EXAMPLE:

Болдыг ажлаас нь хөөсөн.

Болд ажлаасаа хөөгдсөн.

Bold was thrown off his job.

a) Би тэрийг харахгүй байсан.

b) Цагдаа намайг барьсан.

c) Манай нэг морийг чоно идсэн.

d) Бид бол тэднийг ялсан.

e) Тэд нар биднийг ялсан.

f) Анчин гахай алсан.

g) Багш намайг хараагүй.

h) Оюутнууд багшаа сонсохгүй байна.

ii) Join the following groups of sentences together as relative clauses:

EXAMPLE:

Дорж багш ном бичсэн.

Teacher Dorj wrote a book.

Ном нь тэр байна.

That's the book.

Дорж багшийн бичсэн ном тэр байна.

That's the book that the teacher Dorj wrote.

a) Би өчигдөр нэг хүнтэй уулзсан. Тэр бол анчин.

b) Надтай хамт нэг охин явсан. Тэр миний найз биш, эгч.

c) Сая гоё охин орж ирлээ. Би тэрэнтэй уулзъя гэж бодож байна.

d) Нэгдэх өдөр чи хоол хийсэн. Их муу байсан.

e) Би морь унасан. Тэр морь их хурдан байсан.

f) Чи ном уншдаг. Ном чинь муу байдаг.

- g) Би ном авсан. Тэр номыг "Монгол гоёл чимэглэлийн урлаг" гэдэг.
 h) Би архи хийдэг. Гоё байна.

iii) In the following sentences, change "after" to "before":

EXAMPLE:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Чамайг явсны дараа тэрэнд өгнө. | I'll give it to him after you've gone. |
| Чамайг явахаас өмнө тэрэнд өгнө. | I'll give it to him before you've gone. |

- a) Даалгавраа хийсний дараа өрөөгөө цэвэрлэ!
 b) Манай аавыг ирсний дараа гэртээ харь.
 c) Ажлын дараа Доржийнд очих гэж байна.
 d) Доржийнд очсоны дараа кино үзье.
 e) Тэр хоол идсэнийхээ дараа даалгавраа хийсэн.
 f) Энэ киног үзсэний дараа хоолоо хийе.
 g) Дэлгүүрт онсоныхоо дараа би түүнтэй уулзана.
 h) Түүнийг ирсний дараа явъя.

iv) In the following sentences, change "before" to "after".

EXAMPLE:

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| Ажлын өмнө бүтнэ. | It'll be done before work. |
| Ажлын дараа бүтнэ. | It'll be done after work. |

- a) Намайг буцаж ирэхээс өмнө энийг унш!
 b) Үдээс өмнө дэлгүүрээр явсан.
 c) Биднийг хоолоо идэхээс өмнө тэр утасдсан.
 d) Би хичээлийн өмнө даалгавраа хийв.
 e) Хичээл дуусахаас өмнө бнд нар явлаа.
 f) Энэ он дуусахаас өмнө тэр явсан байх ёстой.
 g) Амрахаас өмнө ажиллах ёстой.
 h) Хоол хийхээс өмнө бүх юмаа цэвэрлэх ёстой.

v) Using the verb in brackets, make each of the following sentences an expression of wanting to do or not to do something, using each one of the seven formats described in the grammar section above:

EXAMPLE:

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Архи (уух) | |
| Архи уух юмсан. | I want to drink. |
| Би архи уух хэрэгтэй. | I need to have a drink. |
| Чи архи уух хэрэггүй. | You shouldn't have a drink. |
| Би архи уух дуртай. | I like drinking. |
| Би архи уух дургүй. | I don't like drinking. |

Би архи уух ёстой.	I must have a drink.
Чи архи уух ёсгүй.	You shouldn't drink.
Би архи уух гэж байна.	I'm going to have a drink.
Би архи уух гээгүй байна.	I'm not going to have a drink.
Би архи уумаар байна.	I want a drink.
Би архи уумааргүй байна.	I don't want a drink.
Архи ууя!	Let's have a drink.

- a) Дэлгүүрээр (явах)
- b) Ажилд (очих)
- c) Их хоол (идэх)
- d) Гэртээ (амрах)

vi) Make each of the following sentences an expression of wanting to do something, using -маар⁴ and юмсан:

EXAMPLE:

Маргааш кино үзнэ.	I'll see a film tomorrow.
Маргааш кино үзмээр байна.	I want to see a film tomorrow.
Маргааш кино үзэх юмсан.	

- a) Багшийг ирэхээс өмнө явъя.
- b) Баатар ажилдаа явахгүй. Яагаад гэвэл ханиад хүрсэн.
- c) Дулмаагийн хийсэн хоолыг идэхгүй.
- d) Бид нар шатар тоглоно.

EXERCISES

a) Answer the questions as they apply to you:

1. Хоолоо идэхээс өмнө гараа угаадаг уу, дараа нь угаадаг уу?
2. Чи ном уншдаг уу? Чиний уншдаг ном ямар ном бэ?
3. Чиний бодоход одоо үзэж байгаа энэ ном ямар байна вэ?
4. Чи цагдаад баригдаж үзсэн үү?
5. Ажлаасаа хөөгдөж үзсэн үү?
6. Өнөөдөр оройн хоолоороо юу юу идэх гэж байна вэ?
7. Архи уух дуртай юу?
8. Монголд очмоор байна уу?
9. Хэзээ явах гэж байгаа юм бэ?
10. Очсон хойноо юу юу хийх вэ?

b) Translate from English into Mongolian:

1. I feel like a drink.

2. You look like you need a drink.
3. Before he ate, he looked like a hungry (өлөн) wolf.
4. You should finish this letter before work finishes this evening.
5. It looks like rain tonight.
6. If it rains before nine o'clock, then we won't go.
7. I heard that he left before lunch (=before noon -үд).
8. It looks like it will be hot today.
9. She keeps coming here. I think she likes you.
10. After work, before going home, I have a little (жаахан) drink.

c) Translate from Mongolian into English:

1. -Хар аа, сая орж ирсэн эмэгтэй ямар гоё юм бэ!
2. -Тийм ээ. Тэр найзтай юм уу?
3. -Найзгүй юм шиг байна.
4. -"Сайн байна уу" гэх үү?
5. -Би чамаас өмнө харсан. Би танилцъя.
6. -Тэгвэл хурдан танилц. Тэгэхгүй бол өөр хүн танилцана.
7. -За, энийг уучихаад танилцъя.
8. -Үгүй ээ, архи уухаасаа өмнө оч.
9. -За, за, одоо очлоо!
10. -Хөөе, яана аа! Баатар одоо тэрэнтэй ярилцаж байна.

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

сэм	sem	secretly
ял-(ялах)	yalah	to win, defeat, be victorious
ялагдах	yalagdah	to lose, be defeated
сана-(санах)	sanah	to remember, think of
үдэшлэг	üdeshtag	party, soiree
чоно	chono	wolf
бариул-бариулах	bariulah	to be caught; be eaten (by predators)
уруул-уруулах	uruulah	to be bitten (by a dog, etc.)
огт	ogt	at all, really
үдээс хойш	üdees hoish	in the afternoon, afternoon
дайр-(дайрах)	dairah	to bump into, hit (of car)
дайруулах	dairuulah	to be hit (by a car)
хөө-(хөөх)	hööh	to chase; expel
хөөгдөх	höögdöh	to be thrown out; be sacked
чулуу(-н)	chuluu(-n)	stone
анчин	anching	hunter

гар	gar	hand
эмэгтэй	emegtee	female, woman
танилца-(танилцах)	taniltsah	to get know
ярилца-(ярилцах)	yariltsah	to talk, talk with, converse

CHAPTER THIRTEEN

АРВАН ГУРАВДУГААР ХИЧЭЭЛ

TEXT

Хүү тэр хоолоо идэж орхиод өнөөх тогоогоо аваад гэртээ ирж, юугаар ч дутахгүй суужээ.

Чингэтэл тэднийд ноёны шивэгчин хүүхэн ирэв. Хүүгийн эхнэр хуучин тогоогоо тавиад ус хийж, түүнд түнд цай чанах хэмээсэнд хүү:

-Хөөе, чи энэ хүнд энэ дотор цай чанах гэж байгаа юм уу? гэж хэдээд ердэнийн тогоогоо шүүрч аваад "Сүүтэй сайхан цай буцал!" хэмээсэнд тэр дороо буцалжээ.

Тэр эм цайг нь уучихаад ноёныдоо ирээд:

-Тэр муу ядуу хүү биднээс дээр сууж байна шүү. Эрдэнийн тогоогоор хоол ундаа бүтээлгэж, идэж ууж байдаг юм шүү дээ гэж хэлэв.

Ноён үүнийг сонсоод хүү рүү нэгэн хүн явуулж, тогоотой нь авчруулжээ. Ноён хүүгээс:

-За, наад тогоо чинь яадаг тогоо юм? Чи надад үүнийхээ ид шидийг үзүүлээд орхи хэмээсэнд хүү тогоондоо, "Тогоогоор дүүрэн сүүтэй цай бий бол!" хэмээсэнд тогоо дүүрэн сүүтэй цай буцалжээ.

Ноён үүнийг нь үзээд хүүд:

-За, чи толгойгоо авахуулах уу, тогоогоо өгөх үү? хэмээжээ. Хүү бодож байгаад,

-За, яах вэ. Үхэж орхисноос тогоогоо өгсөн нь дээр байлгүй дээ! хэмээгээд тогоогоо өгөөд буцжээ.

Гэртээ ирээд:

-Ноён тогоог минь авч орхилоо гэж хэлсэнд,

-Чи тэр муу шивэгчин хүүхэнд гайхуулж байж ийм юм боллоо доо! гэж эхнэр нь халжээ.

Чингээд хүү хэрээнд очжээ. Хэрээ:

-За, чи юу гэж явна? хэмээсэнд,

-Өнөөх тогоог чинь ноён авч орхилоо гэж хүү хэлжээ.

Чингэхэд нь хэрээ хүүд нэгэн эрдэнийн алх өгөөд,

-За, энэ алхыг барьж "Таб яб!" гэж хэлээд ямар ч амьтан руу дохиход тэр амьтан үхдэг юм хэмээжээ.

To be continued...

Comprehension

-Дорж гуайг таньдаг уу, та?

Do you know Mr. Dorj?

-Таньдаг, таньдаг.

Yes, I do.

-Хаана танилцсан бэ?

Where did you get to know him?

-Танай үдэшлэг дээр танилцсан. Баттай ярилцахдаа намайг танилцуулж өгөөрэй гэж гуйсан юм.	At your party. While I was talking to Bat I asked him to introduce me to him.
-Тэр үдэшлэг ямар байсан бэ?	How did you find the party?
-Гайгүй. Баатарынхаас дээр байсан шүү.	Not bad. Better than Baatar's.
-Тийм л дээ. Буузыг нь манай охин Цэрмаа хийсэн шүү дээ.	Yes. My daughter Tsermaa made the buuz, you know.
-Тийм үү? Миний идэж үзсэн буузанаас хамгийн сайн нь танай охиных байсан шүү.	Is that so? Your daughter made the best buuz I have ever tasted.

VOCABULARY

Text

орхи-(орхих)	orhih	leave, get rid; take; There, stresses perfect tense
өнөөх	önööh	the one, the same
дута-(дутах)	dutah	to lack, be without
ноён	noyong	prince, noble man
шивэгчин	shivegching	servant girl
эрдэнэ	erdene	jewel, gem
эрдэнийн	erdeniing	precious
шүүрэ-(шүүрэх)	shüüreh	grab, seize
буцал-(буцлах)	butslah	to boil (intr.)
дороо	doroo	immediately
бүтээлгэх	büteeelgeh	have s.t. made (caus. of caus of бүтэх)
эм	em	female
авчруулах	avchruulah	have s.b. bring s.b.
наад	naad	this
ид	id	magic, sorcery
шид	shid	magic, socery
толгой	tolgoi	head
толгой авахуулах	tolgoi avahuulah	to lose one's head
ийм	iim	like this
гайха-(гайхах)	gaihah	be surprised, astonished
гайхуулах	gaihuulah	to surprise, astonish; show off
алх(-ан)	alh(-an)	hammer, mallet

дохь-(дохих) dohih to gesture towards s.t. or s.b.

Comprehension

үдэшлэг	üdeshleḡ	party, soiree
танилцуулах	taniltsuulah	to introduce
гай	gai	harm, danger
гайгүй	gaigüi	not bad, OK.

GRAMMAR

1) The co-operative

Like the passive and the causative, the co-operative is a stem added to the straight stem of a verb to somewhat change its meaning. The co-operative is one of two verb forms which describe an action of two or more people together. It is used more for actions made in a friendly, or at least mutually beneficial manner. The other form, called the reciprocal, deals with more hostile or competitive actions and will be discussed in the next chapter. The new stem, which is added to the verb in the same way as the causative and passive is -лц-, and it changes verbs in the following way:

<i>verb</i>	<i>co-operative</i>	<i>meaning</i>
хэлэх	хэлэлцэх	discuss
ярих	ярилцах	talk, converse
явах	явалцах	associate with, consort with, go about with
таних	танилцах	get to know
орох	оролцох	take part, participate, enter (race etc.)
өгөх	өгөлцөх	exchange
байх	байлцах	be present (e.g. in class etc)

You can see from the above table that what the co-operative does is to change the meaning of the verb from a straight individual action to one which involves two or more people. Thus it changes “talk”, which may be something that only one party does, to “discuss” or “converse”, which is something that needs at least two people. It changes “go” into “associate with”, which can be thought of as similar to English where people “go out with” a girlfriend or boyfriend.

In theory, any verb can be co-operative, if it describes the action as done by several people together. The person you do something with in this way goes into the committative, as you might expect: while the other parts of the sentence also go into predictable patterns:

Тэд бие биедээ бэлэг өгөлцөв.	They exchanged presents.
-Хуралд оролцох уу?	Are you going to the meeting?
-Үгүй, би даргатай ярилцсан.	No, I've discussed it with the boss.
Лам нар эмс охидтой явалцдаггүй.	Monks don't go with women.
Би тавдугаар ангид суралцдаг.	I'm in the fifth year (in class five).

The causative can be added to the co-operative:

Би чамайг түүнтэй танилцуулья.	I'll introduce you to him (lit. cause to get to know).
Намайг энэ хуралд оролцуулсан.	I was pushed into attending the meeting.

2) Comparative and superlative (good, better and best)

a) adjectives. Adjectives fall into three groups. These are called the positive, comparative and superlative. In English, we have the suffixes -er and -est, as in good, better, best: small, smaller, smallest: big, bigger, biggest and so on. We have already seen how the ablative (Chapter 4) can be used for the comparative. In this chapter we shall look at how adjectives work in all three forms.

First of all, the *positive*. This is the basic form of the adjective, and goes before the noun it qualifies without changing for the different cases, just like English:

Энэ сонин ном байна.	This is an interesting book.
Би сонин ном уншиж байна.	I am reading an interesting book.
Өнөөдөр би сонин хүнтэй танилцсан.	Today I met an interesting person.

The *comparative* compares the merits of two objects or people; or of two groups of objects or people. When they are both specifically mentioned, the ablative (than) is used. No ending is added to the adjective itself to correspond to the English "-er". For "better", the word дээр (lit. "higher") is often used instead of сайн:

Энэ ном бол тэрнээс сайн.	This book is better than that one.
Хөх пальто улаанаас нь дээр.	The blue coat is better than the red.
Энэ машин тэрнээс муу.	This car is worse than that one.
Миний өрөө чинийхээс цэвэрхэн.	My room is cleaner than yours.

Note that in Mongolian there is no way of comparing in a negative way, there is no way saying "less...than" or "not as...as". What this means is that instead of saying "England is not as big as Mongolia", you would have to turn it round and say "England is smaller than Mongolia" or "Mongolia is bigger than England".

Where we would say in English "of these two, this one is better", Mongolian uses the genitive for the "of":

Энэ хоёрын хар нь сайн. Of (lit. out of) the two, the black one is better.

Note this small difference:

Энэ машин тэр хоёроос сайн. This car is better than those two.

Энэ хоёр машины энэ нь сайн. Out of the two, this car is better.

This could lead to confusion, but things are usually clear from the context.

Sometimes the word *дунд*, meaning “middle” or “among” is used, with or without the ablative:

Бидний дундаас тэр сайн ярьдаг. Out of us, he speaks better.

Finally, the *superlative*. The superlative is what in English is characterised by the use of the word “most” or the suffix -est on the adjective, as in “this is the best horse I’ve seen today”; “the bay horse is the fastest” or “this book is the most interesting”.

In Mongolian, the word *хамгийн* is used to denote superlative. This in fact is the genitive of *хамар*, which in itself means “all”, “whole” or “everything”. The *хамгийн* precedes the noun it qualifies:

Энэ ном бол хамгийн сонин. This book is the most interesting.

Энэ бол хамгийн сонин ном. This is the most interesting book.

Хамгийн сонин ном бол энэ байна. The most interesting book is this one.

When what is under discussion is the best **of** a group, the genitive or ablative can be used, as can the genitive with *дунд* on its own or with the ablative:

Миний үзсэн киноны хамгийн сайн нь энэ байна. This is the best film I’ve seen (lit. Of my seen films this is best).

Миний үзсэн киноноос хамгийн сайн нь энэ байна. This is the best film I’ve seen (lit. From my seen...).

Миний үзсэн киноны дунд хамгийн сайн нь энэ байна. This is the best film I’ve seen (lit. Among my seen...).

Миний үзсэн киноны дундаас хамгийн сайн нь энэ байна. This is the best film I’ve seen (lit. From among my seen...).

Positive, comparative and superlative in one sentence might look something like this:

Энэ нь сайн, тэр нь арай дээр, харин энэ нь хамгийн сайн. This is good, that one is a little better, but this one is the best.

Хээр морь хурдан, загал морь тэрнээс арай хурдан, харин хамгийн хурдан нь шарга морь юм. The chestnut horse is fast, the piebald is a little faster but the fastest (of all) is the bay.

b) adverbs. Just as an adjective qualifies a noun, an adverb qualifies a verb. They can have comparatives and superlatives as well, just like adjectives, as in “you can work fast,

but he works faster”, where “faster” is a comparative adverb. In simple sentences, the comparative or superlative simply precedes the action it qualifies:

Тэр чамаас хурдан ажилладаг.	He works faster than you.
Хамгийн хурдан ажилладаг хүн бол тэр байна.	She is the one who works the fastest.

In more complicated examples, a different case may be involved, which may have to be dropped, giving rise to possible confusion as to what is being compared to what. Look at the following examples:

Би тэрэнд чамаас илүү хайртай.	I love her more than (I love) you.
Би чамаас тэрэнд илүү хайртай.	I love her more than you (love her).

As you can see from these examples, there may be a confusion even in English. Take out the words in brackets, and you have the same sentence with different meanings which will only be clear from the context. In Mongolian the confusion is resolved by the word order. In the first example, the two positions that are being compared are: би тэрэнд хайртай—“I love her”; and би чамд хайртай—I love you. The object of the comparison, the “than” word, follows what it is being compared to, and it drops whatever case ending it had, in this case the dative, to take the necessary ablative. A literal translation might run something like this: “I love her, more than (for) you, have love”.

In the second example too, the object of comparison follows what it is being compared to. It is simpler because two things being compared are subjects, therefore they are at the beginning of the sentence and nominative. A literal translation of the second example might run something like: “I, more than you, for her have love”. Here are a few more examples:

Би энэ номд тэрнээс нь илүү дуртай.	I like this book better than this one.
Бид машинаар явахаасаа автобусаар илүү олон явдаг.	We go more by bus than by car.
Би түүнтэй чамаас өмнө танилцсан.	I met her before (I met) you.
Би чамаас өмнө түүнтэй танилцсан.	I met her before you (did).

Sometimes we compare two possible actions. In such cases, дээр is used for “better” and the possible action or actions are in the past tense, even though, as possibilities, they should logically be in the future:

Түүнтэй хамт явсан нь дээр.	We’d do better to go with him.
Чи одоо ирсэн нь дээр.	It would be better if you came now.
Энд сууснаас тэнд очсон нь дээр.	It would be better to go there than to stay here.

Where the possible actions were in the past, then the word байсан (was) is added at the end to demonstrate this, whether it is something that would have been better done:

Гэртээ харьсан нь дээр байсан.	It would have been better to go home.
Чи өөрөө бичсэн нь дээр байсан юм.	It would have been better to write it yourself.

or whether it is something that was in fact done and a good thing too:

Тэгсэн нь дээр болжээ. (болсон юм). It was better to have done that (It was a good thing you did that).

Улааныг авсан нь дээр болжээ (болсон юм). It was better to have bought the red one.

3) Emphatics

We have met a few of the emphatic particles in previous chapters. These will be summarised here for your convenience.

a) аа⁴. Follows separately after the end of the verb:

Халуун байна аа .	Oh, it is hot.
Би одоо ажилтай байна аа .	I'm working now.
Одоо очно оо !	I'm just coming!
Болно оо , болно.	That'll be fine.

When used with the past tense -сан⁴ ending, this emphatic particle lengthens the vowel in the middle of the ending, and is not added after the end. This is not written in the script but would be understood from the context, and is pronounced in speech. Therefore явсан in this form would be pronounced as явсаан (he has gone!).

b) даа⁴. This too follows separately at the end of the sentence, often with the particle л in between:

Болно л доо!	That'll be fine!
Тэр явсан л даа!	He has gone!
Юмгүй (л) дээ.	Nothing at all!

c) шүү and шүү дээ. These follow separately at the end of the sentence as well. The first is actually a compound, made up of биш үү and corrupted to шүү. The second adds б) даа⁴ above. It almost corresponds to “rhetorical” questions in English usage like “isn't it” or “didn't I” and so on:

Би явахгүй шүү!	I'm not going!
Тэр өнөөдөр ирсэн шүү дээ.	She came today didn't she?
-Чи хаачсан бэ?	Where have you been?
-Би юманд гарсан шүү дээ!	I went out on business didn't I?

In the colloquial spoken language, the шүү дээ is more often than not pronounced as though written штээ.

4) Possessive pronouns ("yours" and "mine")

We have already met the possessive adjectives миний, чиний, түүний and so on. In this section we shall discuss the pronouns derived from them. First of all, a word of explanation.

An adjective tells you something about a noun. It "qualifies" that noun. A simple sentence like "it is a book" tells you very little about the book, apart from the fact that a book is what it is. If we say "red book", then this tells us a bit more about it. "My book" tells us a bit more about the book in exactly the same way as "red book" does, which makes the word "my" an adjective in this case.

A pronoun stands in the place of a noun. Therefore instead of saying, for example, "mother" at the beginning of each sentence on that subject, we can say "she". Instead of saying "book" all the time, we can say "it". With a phrase like "my book", we can also drop the "book", which just leaves us with "mine" or "my one". This is the possessive pronoun.

We can do this in Mongolian also, so that "my" is миний and mine is минийх. Here are some examples in sentences:

Энэ хоёр ном байна. Энэ нь минийх, тэр нь чинийх. There are these two books. This one is mine, and this is yours.

-Энэ чиний цүнх үү? Is this your bag?

-Үгүй, тэрнийх. No, it is his.

By adding the '-х' to any genitive ending we can make a variety of possessive pronouns:

-Энэ хэний машин бэ? Whose car is this?

-Доржийнх It's Dorj's.

Cases can be added to the possessive pronouns:

Чиний машинаар явъя. Минийхээс дээр шүү дээ. Let's go in your car. It's better than mine.

-Тэр хэний морийг унаж байна вэ? Whose horse is he riding?

-Өөрийнхөө морийг (өөрийнхийгөө). His own.

Чи тамхигүй болов уу? Have you run out of smokes?

Минийхээс ав л даа! Have one of mine.

The -х suffix which makes the possessive pronoun has also a longer form, -хан⁴, which can be used with personal or place names to mean people of that person or place. We have already met this in the case of манайхан and танайхан, meaning "my family" and "your family". Here are some more examples:

Улаанбаатарынхан The people of Ulaanbaatar

Баатарынхан Baatar's family

Долгорынхон Dolgor's family

Нью-Йоркийнхон

New Yorkers

but:

Би Лондонгийнх.

I am an Londoner

Дорж хотынх, Цэрмаа хөдөөнийх.

Dorj is from the city, Tsermaa is from the countryside

It should be noted that when this is used with a personal name to describe somebody's family, it does not have to be the surname of the family, nor yet the name of the head of the family, but of the member of the family with whom one is perhaps best acquainted.

DRILLS

i) In the following sentences, put the underlined verb into the co-operative. Remember that the original sentence may be wrong, or just something slightly different:

EXAMPLE:

Тэр бид хоёр ярьсан.

Тэр бид хоёр ярилцсан.

We two talked.

a) Миний хүү, би өнөөдөр танай багштай таньсан.b) Тэр бид хоёр сурлагыг чинь хэлсэн.c) -Чи олон хуралд орсон уу?d) -Үгүй, өчигдөр ганц хуралд орсон.e) Тэр найзтайгаа үнссэн.f) Танай хүү өнөөдөр хичээлдээ ороогүй.g) Тэр найзаа аав, ээжтэйгээ таниулсан.h) Би бол монгол хүнтэй захиагаар харьцдаг.

ii) Using the following nouns and adjectives, make two comparative sentences:

EXAMPLE:

аав; хүү; өндөр

Аав нь хүүгээсээ өндөр.

The father is taller than his son.

Хүү нь ааваасаа өндөр.

The son is taller than his father.

a) энэ ном; чиний ном; сайн

b) машин; морь; хурдан

c) Баатар; Ганболд; том

d) ээж; эгч; илүү сайхан хоол хийдэг.

e) манайх; танайх; хол.

f) Доржийнх; Батынх; олон малтай.

g) би; энэ оюутан; сайн зурдаг.

h) өчигдрийн хуушуур; энэ; муу байсан.

iii) Using the following groups of nouns, adverbs and verbs, make two comparative sentences:

EXAMPLE:

Дорж, Долгор, сайн, ажиллах

Дорж Долгороос сайн ажилладаг.

Dorj works better than Dolgor.

Долгор Доржоос сайн ажилладаг.

Dolgor works better than Dorj.

- a) ах, дүү, хурдан, бичих
- b) заримдаа би, чи, амттай, хоол, хийх
- c) тэр, Бат, олон, кино, үзэх
- d) аав, би, илүү олон, ном, унших
- e) энэ машин, автобус, удаан, явах
- f) галт тэргээр явах, онгоцоор явах, удаан (хурдан)

iv) Using the following sentences and nouns, make superlative sentences:

EXAMPLE:

Энд олон пальто байна. Энэ нь сайн.

There are a lot of coats here. This one's nice.

Энд байгаа олон пальтоноос энэ нь хамгийн сайн. Of the many coats here, this one is nicest.

- a) Энд гурван тогоо байна. Хар нь том.
- b) Би олон кино үзсэн. Өчигдрийн кино муу байсан.
- c) Монгол хүн бүр бууз хийдэг. Манай ээж амттай бууз хийдэг.
- d) Доржийнх олон адуутай. Тэр загал морь нь хурдан.
- e) Монгол дөрвөн улиралтай. намар сайхан.
- f) Тэд тавуулаа ширээ хийсэн. Баатарынх муу байна.

v) In the following sentences, replace the second noun and possessive adjective with a possessive pronoun:

EXAMPLE:

Энэ миний ном, тэр нь чиний ном.

Энэ миний ном, тэр нь чинийх.

This is my book, that one is yours.

- a) Батын машин хар, улаан нь Долгорын машин.
- b) Би чихрээ идсэн, энэ гурав чиний чихэр.
- c) Том нь миний талх, жижиг нь нь чиний талх.
- d) Энэ бол Зуны малгай, харин тэр бол өвлийн малгай.
- e) Энэ өнөөдрийн хоол, тэр бол өчигдрийн хоол.
- f) Сайхан нь Баатарын ном, муухай нь Дулмаагийн ном.

EXERCISES

a) Answer the questions as they apply to you:

1. Та нарын хамгийн өндөр нь хэн бэ?
2. Чи найз нартайгаа уулздаг уу?
3. Зун хотод байснаас хөдөө явсан нь дээр үү?
4. Чи хоол хийлцдэг үү?
5. Энэ олон номын аль нь хамгийн сайн бэ?
6. Өчигдрийн хуралд; найз чинь оролцсон уу?
7. Чи намайг найзтайгаа танилцуулах уу?
8. Чи өөрийнхөө өрөөг Доржийнхоос цэвэрхэн гэж боддог уу?
9. Энэ өвөл ноднингийнхоос илүү хүйтэй байна шүү.
10. Танай ангийнхан энэ номын тухай ярилцсан уу?

b) Translate from English into Mongolian:

1. I don't like to fight.
2. I think this book is better than the one I read.
3. My brother's horse is the fastest among others.
4. Dorj is from countryside, but his wife is from city.
5. His family would do better to go by train than going by his old car.
6. She introduced him to her family.
7. Baatar likes to participate in meetings.
8. My students always discuss about the lessons they've learnt.
9. It would have been better for you to have stayed at home yesterday.
10. I went to the shop twice, but I couldn't get any bread.

c) Translate from Mongolian into English:

1. Энэ киног үзсэн бол дээр байсан юм.
2. Биднээс Долгор хамгийн муу хоол хийдэг.
3. Өчигдөр хөдөө яваагүй нь сайн болжээ.
4. Би энэ ажлыг даргатайгаа хэлэлцсэн.
5. Ахын морь Болдынхоос хурдан, харин минийх хамгийн хурдан нь.
6. Энэ киног би ганц удаан үзсэн.
7. -Дулмаагийн хийсэн бууз сайхан байсан уу?
8. -Үгүй, Баатарынх илүү амттай байсан.
9. Багштай ярилцаж байгаа хүн хэн бэ?
10. Улаан машин нь хараасаа хуучин юм байна.

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

хурал	hural	meeting, conference
лам	lam	lama, monk
дунд	dund	middle, central; among

арай	arai	a little
хамгийн	hamgiing	most, -est
илүү	ilüü	more, over, extra
хурдан	hurdang	quick, quickly
ганцхан	gangtsahang	one, only the one
үнэс-(үнсэх)	ünseh	to kiss
харьца-(харьцах)	har'tsah	to compare
харилцах	hariltsah	to correspond
удаан	udaang	slow, slowly
хээр	heer	(colour of horse) chestnut
загал	zagal	(colour of horse) piebald
шарга	sharga	(colour of horse) bay

CHAPTER FOURTEEN

АРВАН ДӨРӨВДҮГЭЭР ХИЧЭЭЛ

TEXT

Хүү өнөөх алхыг нь аваад буцаж явтал нь нэгэн тарвага гүйж яваа харагдав. Тэр тарвага руу алхаараа "Таб яб" хэмээгээд дохьсонд тарвага үхэв. Хүү тарвагаа аваад гэртээ ирээд байж байтал гадуур нь олон зээр явж байв. Түүний зүг алхаараа "Таб яб" хэмээгээд дохьсонд бүгдээрээ үхчихэв. Хүү эхнэртэйгээ зээрийнхээ махыг цадтал идээд байдаг боджээ.

Чингэж амар тайван амьдарч байтал нь ноёны өнөөх шивэгчин бас иржээ. Тэр хүүхэн өнөөх хоёроос:

-За, та хоёр яаж амьдарч байна даа? хэмээсэнд хүү:

-Би эрдэнийн алх олж ирсэн. Түүгээрээ зээр алж тавтай сайхан сууж байна хэмээжээ.

Шивэгчин үүнийг дуулаад ноёндоо ирж хүүгийн үгийг хэлжээ. Ноён гүүнийг сонсоод мөн л хүн явуулж хүүг алхтай нь авчруулаад,

-Чиний алх ямар эрдэмтэй, яадаг алх вэ? хэмээсэнд,

-Миний алх бол эрдэнийн алх юм. Нүдэндээ харагдсан амьтан руу "Таб яб" хэмээгээд дохиход тэр үхдэг юм гэж хүү хэлжээ.

Чингэхэд ноён хотын захад гүйж яваа нохойг хараад "Түүнийг дохиод орхи!" хэмээсэнд хүү заасан руу нь "Таб яб" хэмээгээд дохьсонд нохой нь үхжээ.

Чингэхээр ноён хүүд бас л:

-За, чи алхаа өгнө үү, толгойгоо авахуулна уу? хэмээсэнд хүү:

-Алхаа ч өгөхгүй, толгойгоо ч авахуулахгүй! хэмээжээ.

Чингэхээр нь ноён уурлаж,

-Энэ муу задарсан нохой чинь юу гэж хуцаж байгаа юм бэ? Тэр алхыг нь аваад аль! гэхээр нь хүү:

-Ноён ч таб яб, хатан ч таб яб, ноёныхон цөмөөрөө таб яб! хэмээгээд ноёныхныг алж орхижээ.

Тэгээд хүү ноён ширээнд сууж, хошуу нутгаа захираад амар сайхан жаргажээ.

Comprehension

Тэр эхнэртэйгээ маргалдсан.

He argued with his wife.

Тэр хоёр залуу зодолджээ.

Those two lads had a fight.

Өнөөдөр хоёр машин мөргөлдөв.

Two cars crashed today.

Би бол бөх. Би барилддаг.

I am a wrestler. I wrestle.

-Би гадагшаа гарлаа.

I'm going out.

-Хаашаа явах гэж байна вэ?	Where are you going?
Ийшээ явах уу, тийшээ явах уу?	Do we go this way or that?
Нааш ир, миний хүү.	Come here, my child.
Цаашаа яв!	Go over that way!
Эндээс хойшоо явах ёстой.	You have to go north from here.
Бид лифтээр дээш, доош явсан.	We went up and down in the lift.
Цагаан сарын наана.	This side of New Year.
Цагаан сарын цаана.	That side of New Year.
Дархан хот бол Монголын хойт зүгт байдаг.	The city of Darhan is located in the north of Mongolia.
улаахан	reddish
намхан ширээ	a low table
хямдхан хоол	cheap food
Надад гуравхан фунт бий.	I've got only three pounds.
Би чамаас тавхан дүү.	I'm only five years younger than you.
Тэр хориод настай.	She is in her twenties.
Мягмарынх зуу орчим хоньтой.	Myagmar has about one hundred sheep.

VOCABULARY

Text

гүй-(гүйх)	güih	to run
үхэ-(үхэх)	üheh	to die
зээр(-эн)	zeer(-en)	antelope, Mongolian gazelle
зүг	züg	direction; towards
цада-(цадах)	tsadah	be satisfied, sated, fill up
тайван	taivang	peace; peaceful
амар тайван	amar taivang	peaceful; peacefully
тав	tav	peace, comfort
тавтай	tavtai	peacefully; comfortable
дуул-(дуулах)	duulah	(here) hear; sing
үг(-эн)	üg(en)	word, words
нүд(-эн)	nüd(en)	eye
хот	hot	here. settlement

зах	zah	border, edge; collar (of clothes etc)
заа-(заах)	zaah	<i>here.</i> to point at
задра-(задрах)	zadrah	(here) misbehave; to be exposed, shown up
хуца-(хуцах)	hutsah	to bark (like dog)
хатан	hatang	queen, noble woman
цөм	tsöm	all, everything; each one
ширээ(-н)	shiree(-n)	(here) throne
хошуу(-н)	hoshuu(-n)	(here) banner (an admin. division), area, land
захир-(захирах)	zahirah	to govern
жарга-(жаргах)	jargah	be happy, get happy

Comprehension

марга-(маргах)	margah	to argue, debate, dispute
маргалдах	margaldah	to argue, squabble, quarrel
зодо-(зодох)	zodoh	to beat, thump
зодолдох	zodoldoh	to fight, brawl
цэрэг	tsereg	soldier
дайн	daing	war
байлдах	baildah	to fight
мөргө-(мөргөх)	mörgökh	to butt (like goat), headbutt
мөргөлдөх	mörgöldöh	to collide, crash (of car)
бөх	böh	strong, hard; wrestler
барилдах	barildah	to wrestle
гадагш	gadagsh	out(wards), outside
ийш	iish	this way
тийш	tiish	that way
нааш	naash	this way, to here, hither
цааш	tsaash	that way, to there, thither
хойш	hoish	north(wards)
дээш	deesh	up(wards)
доош	doosh	down(wards)
Цагаан сар	tsagaan sar	Mongolian New Year (usu. in Feb.; lit. "white moon")
наана	naana	this side

цаана	tsaana	that side
хойт	hoit	north
орчим	orchim	about, roughly

GRAMMAR

1) The reciprocal

Like the causative, the passive and the co-operative, the reciprocal is a verb form. Like those others, it involves adding a new stem to the verb and sticking your tense endings on that.

The reciprocal is very much like the co-operative, both in the form of the new stem and in the way that the form is used. The stem is a simple -лд-, always, whatever the basic stem of the verb in question. Like the co-operative, it deals with actions that may be performed more than one actor. Unlike the co-operative, however, the reciprocal is rather less friendly and is often violent. In theory, any verb can be made reciprocal, but in practice it is largely restricted to actions of a largely violent or at least confrontational nature. Here are a few examples of how the reciprocal is made:

<i>verb</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>reciprocal</i>	<i>meaning</i>
маргах	argue	маргалдах	argue
зодох	beat, thump	зодолдох	fight
байх	be	байлдах	fight
мөргөх	butt	мөргөлдөх	crash
барих	hold	барилдах	wrestle

You might be able to see from the table what is happening here. Байх is perhaps the best examples to start with, as it has common co-operative and reciprocal forms. The co-operative of байх is simply байлцах, “to be present”, perhaps in a classroom, whereas the reciprocal байлдах indicates “fight”. Both mean that more than one person is there at the same time, but while the former says nothing more than this and in fact implies that the situation is a friendly one, the latter is saying that the being together in one place is of such a violent nature that actual hostilities break out. Similarly, from the verb барих—“to hold”, we have барилдах, which is to hold competitively, and to struggle at the same time, hence to wrestle. Мөргөх, to butt or bump, is what one car might do to a wall, or an angry goat might do to somebody’s backside, while мөргөлдөх is what two rams or goats might do to each other, or when two cars collide head on.

In short, where the co-operative co-operates and does things together, the reciprocal reciprocates and retaliates.

Here are few examples in sentences:

Бид тэд нартай зодолдсон.	We fought with them.
Баатар Доржтой (бөх) барилдсан.	Baatar wrestled with Dorj.
Манай хүү эгчтэйгээ дандаа маргалдаад л байдаг.	My son is always arguing with his sister.

As you can see from the first of the examples above, there is a potential point of confusion here, a confusion possible in English also. Since it is something that two or more parties are engaged in at the same time, the reciprocal logically takes the committative (“with” in English). So, in the case of “fight”, if we take a simple sentence like “I fought with him”, out of any explanatory context, we don’t really know whether the “with” means “in company with”, i.e. on the same side as; or whether it means “against”. In English we get around this by saying something like “I fought him”, meaning against; or “I fought on his side”. In Mongolian the issue can be resolved by using either the co-operative or the reciprocal:

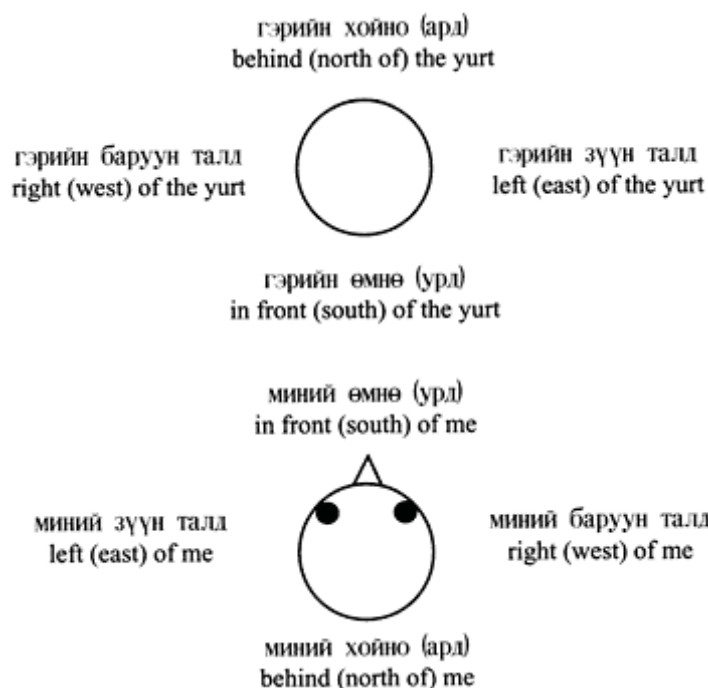
Би Доржтой хамт зодолшсон.	I fought with (on the side of) Dorj.
Би Доржтой зодолдсон.	I fought with (against) Dorj.

2) Positions and directions

In several of the texts in previous chapters we have come across different ways of describing the position of something, like дээр, дор, өмнө (above, below, in front of) and so on. We have also come across several ways of describing the direction of travel of something, like дээш, доош (up, down) and so on. In this section I shall try and describe how all these things work.

a) geographical points. We have had the words for north, south, east and west before. They are хойно, өмнө, зүүн and баруун. What makes these a little more confusing is that they also stand for behind, in front of, left and right. There is a reason for this. The reason is that the Mongols traditionally lived, as many still do, in a felt tent called in English a yurt (from the Turkish) and in Mongolian a гэр. Wherever you find Mongols living in gers, from Manchuria in the north to Xinjiang and Tibet in the east, from lake Baikal in the north to parts of Yunnan in the south, the door always faces the south, because the prevailing wind is from the north and this helps stop draughts. Therefore anything which is in front of the ger is also necessarily south of it.

These points are postpositions, and take the genitive. Here are some diagrams showing how they work:



You will see that in the first diagram the positions of left and right are inverted. This is because the two world views, as it were, are incompatible. Our maps are always oriented with north at the top, with west on the left side and east on the right. The Mongolian world view is oriented with south in front, which puts west on the right-hand side. The point of reference is always the front of the yurt, which always faces south. If you are facing the yurt, and someone therefore appears to be standing to the right of it, the geographical orientation is paramount and he or she must be described as standing to the left, or east. As for buildings on streets the orientation is simply the way the front door faces. The same goes for the way that people are facing. The point to remember is that on the open steppe in plenty of space the important things are north, south, east and west; whereas on city streets and in close personal encounters the important things become front, back, left and right. Here are some examples of how these positions work in sentences:

Богд уул бол Улаанбаатарын **өмнө** талд байдаг.

Bogd Uul is (to the) **south** of Ulaanbaatar.

Миний **өмнө** нэг малгайтай хүн сууж байсан.

There was a man in a hat sitting **in front** of me.

Бидний **хойно** сууж байсан хүмүүс дандаа яриад байсан.

The people **behind** us kept on talking.

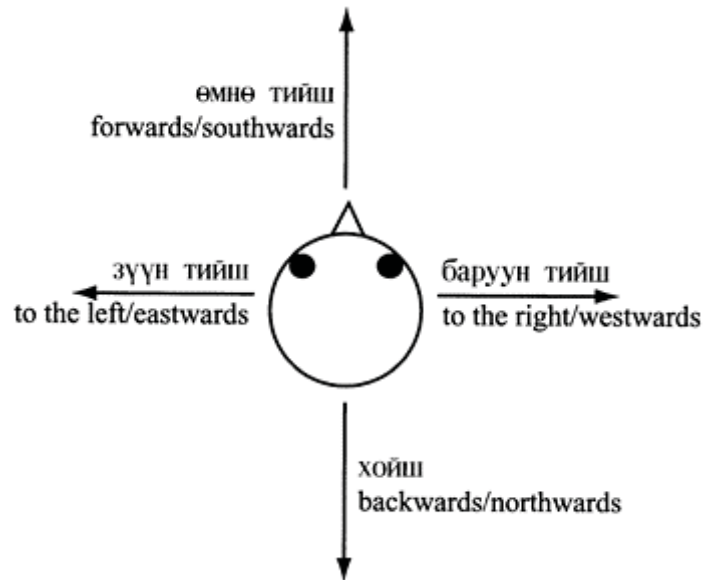
Манай ангид Цэнд миний **баруун** талд, Дорж **зүүн** талд суудаг.

In our classroom, Tsend sits on my **right** and Dorj sits on my **left**.

Remember also that өмнө and хойно can also mean “before” and “after” in terms of time. “Before” is usually used for time in English these days, but it can just as well be “in front of”.

Note that хойно, өмнө, баруун and зүүн can be хойт тал (хойт зүг), өмнө (өмнөд) тал (зүг), баруун тал (зүг) and зүүн тал (зүг).

So much for static positions. What about directions, like forwards and backwards, north and south(wards)? To describe these, Mongolian takes the stem of the postpositions described above and add the suffix -ш or the word тийш. Here is another diagram:



These are postpositions that take the ablative, which makes sense since they are directions away from a centre. This applies also to “after” and “before”, implying time stretching away with no definite limit. Here are some examples in sentences:

Би үдээс хойш дэлгүүрээр явъя гэж бодож байна. I think I’ll go shopping this afternoon.

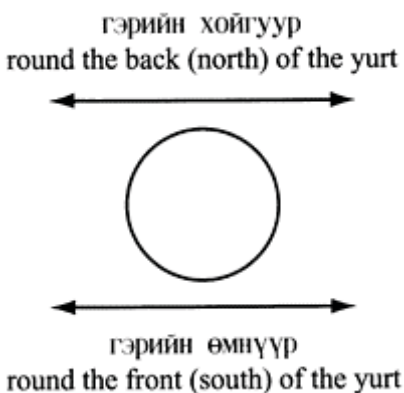
Эндээс урагшаа явбал хүрнэ. If you go south of here you’ll get there.

Quite often the reflexive is added to the suffix:

Би хойшоо явна. I’m going up north.

Тэр баруун тийшээ морьтой гарсан. He rode off west.

So far we have covered positions to the side of things, and directions away from things. What remains is to look at ways of going around things. This means a new suffix: -ууп². This diagram shows the suffix in action:



Here are some examples in sentences:

Тэр байшингийн хойгуур орсон.

He came in round the back of the house.

Би сургуулийн өмнүүр явж

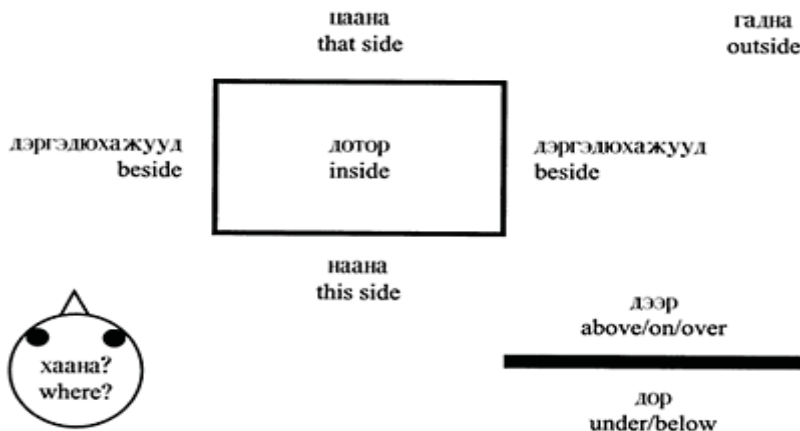
As I passing along the front of the

байгаад багштай тааралдсан.

school I bumped into the teacher.

These are also other words for north, south, east and west, which are used in purely geographical and global contexts like “the Far East”, “the West”, “the northern hemisphere” and so on. These are to be found in the vocabulary at the back of this book.

b) Other positions and directions. Above we dealt with the words for geographical positions and directions, which also double as front, back, left and right. We will go on now to look at words for other locations and directions of movement. These two fall into three groups, distinguished in the main by different suffixes, describing position, direction from and direction along. First of all, the positions. Words describing the simple location or position of something are shown in this diagram:



If you think back to Chapter Six, you will remember that we already covered дээр, дор and дотор under the subject of postpositions. You may remember that these three take

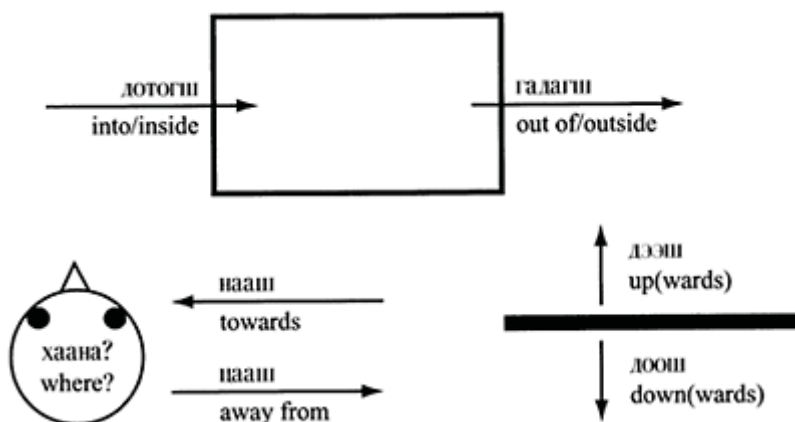
what is called the oblique stem, which is the -n of an -n stem noun, and no ending at all for other nouns. All the others, with the exception of хаана, are genitive-taking postpositions. Хаана also exists as хаа. Here are some examples in sentences:

-Миний үзэг хаана байна?	Where is my pen?
-Ширээн дээр байгаа.	It's on the table.
-Чиний дэргэд хэн суудаг вэ?	Who sits beside you?
-Миний дэргэд Дорж суудаг.	Dorj sits beside me.
-Чиний тамхи хаана байна?	Where are your cigarettes?
-Миний цүнхэн дотор бий. Авах уу?	They're in my bag. Do you want one?
Богд уул (бол) голын цаана байдаг.	Bogd Uul is on the other side of the river.
Их сургууль (бол) голын наана байдаг.	The University is on this side of the river.
Би даргын өрөөний гадна хүлээсэн.	I waited outside the boss's office.

Наана and цаана can apply to time as well, like өмнө and хойно. They too can mean before and after, but because they literally mean “this side” and “that side”, they will be “before” or “after” depending on whether you are speaking before or after a certain event. Here are some examples to illustrate this:

Хүүгийнхээ төрсөн өдрийн наана бэлэг авах ёстой.	We should get a present before our son's birthday.
Энэ ажлыг би Наадмын наана дуусгана.	I'll finish this job before Naadam.
-Энэ ажлыг чи Шинэ жилийн наана дуусгах уу?	Will you finish this job this side of New Year?
-Үгүй байх аа. Шинэ жилийн цаана дуусч магадгүй.	Probably not. It'll probably be done after New Year.

So much for the positions of things in relation to other things. Let's look now at directions from and into things. Again the suffix is -ш, and the following diagrams show how these work:



More often than not, these are used with the reflexive -аа⁴. Here are some examples in sentences:

Тэр лифтээр дээшээ гараад шатаар доошоо буусан.

He went up in the lift and came down by the stairs.

Эндээс нэг хэсэг цаашаа явъя.

Let's go on a further (from here).

Би гадагшаа гарна.

I'm going out(side).

Also in this group come the words ийш and тийш ("this way" and "that way"), which are the directional forms of ийм and тийм ("like this" and "like that"). They are not really relative to the speaker or actor like нааш and цааш, they simply describe arbitrarily two opposing directions:

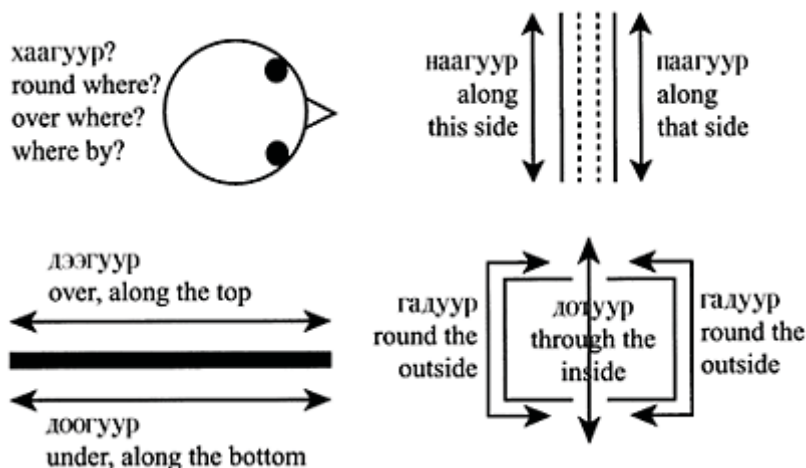
Ийшээ явъя!

Let's go this way!

Ийшээ явах уу, тийшээ явах уу?

Do we go this way or that way?

As with the geographical expressions, these others also have an "along" form, made by adding the same -уу² suffix. The diagrams below illustrate these:



Here are some more examples of them in action in sentences:

Тэр голын наагуур явж байсан.	He was going along this side of the river.
Тэр замын цаагуур явсан.	He went along the other side of the road.
Би сургуулийн наагуур ирлээ.	I came along this side of the school.
Тэр байрны гадуур явсан.	He went around the outside of the house.
Тэр хашаан дотуур явсан.	He went through the fence.
Би дандаа гүүрэн доогуур явдаг.	I always go under the bridge.

To sum up, all these words which describe the location or position or direction of something are postpositions. If they simply describe the location of something relative to something else, then they take the genitive ending or the oblique stem. If they describe motion away from or out of something then they take the ablative and have an -ш or -шаа⁴ ending; if motion into something then they take the dative and have the same ending. If they describe motion over, around or across etc. something, then they have the ending -уур² and take the genitive. The following table summarises this:

хаа, хаана	хааш(аа)	хаагуур
where	where to	along where, which side of
ард, хойно, хойт талд	арагш, хойш	араар, хойгуур
in the north/behind	northwards/backwards	by the north/round the back
урд, өмнө, өмнө талд	урагш	өмнүүр, урдуур
in the south/in front of	southwards/forwards	by the south/round the front
зүүнтээ, зүүн талд	зүүн тийш	зүүнтээгүүр, зүүн талаар
in the east/left of	eastwards/to the left	along the east side
баруунтаа, баруун талд	баруун тийш	баруунтаагуур, баруун талаар

in the west/right of	westwards/to the right	along the west side
наана, наад талд	нааш	нааруур
on this side	this way	round this side
цаана, цаад талд	цааш	цааруур
on that side	that way, away	round the other side
хажууд, дэргэд	хажуу тийш	хажуугаар, дэргэдүүр
beside	toward the side	along the side
дотог	дотогш	дотуур
inside	into	through the inside (+gen)
гадаа, гадна	гадагш	гадуур
outside	outside	round the outside
дээр, дээд талд	дээш	дээгүүр
on top of	up, upwards	over
доор, доод талд	доош	доогуур
underneath	down, downwards	underneath
энэ талд	ийш	үүгээр, энэ талаар
on this side	this way	by here, along here
тэр талд	тийш	түүгээр, тэр талаар
on that side	that way	by there, along there

3) All kinds of everything

In this section we shall deal with various ways of saying “all” in the Mongolian language. This is more complicated than in English, where we have just the one word, whether it be adjective or pronoun.

To begin with, there are several words for “all”. As adjectives (i.e. with another word, like “all the people” or “all these books”), there are бүх, бүхэн and бүр, and as pronouns (like “all of them” or “all of us”) there are бүгд and цөм. In the colloquial language, бүгд is more common. Let’s look at the adjectives first, they are simpler.

a) adjectives. Бүх comes before the noun it qualifies, бүхэн and бүр come after it, like this:

бүх хүн	everybody, everyone
хүн бүр	"
хүн бүхэн	"

In the nominative, the phrase takes its place in the sentence without a case ending just like any other noun or adjective-noun compound:

Хүн бүр чихэрт дуртай.	Everybody likes sweets.
Бүх багш нар ирсэн.	All the teachers came.
Хүн бүхэн мэднэ.	Everybody knows.

In sentences where it is needed with another case ending, that ending is tacked onto the end of the whole phrase:

Бүх хүүхдийн ажил нь сайн байна.	The work of all the children is good.
Янз бүрийн жимс байдаг.	There's all kinds of fruit (lit. fruit of all kinds).
Хүн бүхнээс татвар авдаг.	Everybody is taxed (lit. [they] take tax from everybody).

b) pronouns. Where “all” is being used as a pronoun (i.e. without a noun to go with it, as in the case of “all of us” or “we all...”) things become a little more complicated because of the way it is used when it is the subject of the sentence. As subject, it goes into the instrumental with the reflexive. There is even one instance in the last part of the tale at the top of this chapter where the instrumental and reflexive have been used even though the idea is actually the object of the sentence, but this is so rare as to be almost negligible. Here are some examples where it is the subject of the sentence:

Бид бүгдээрээ явсан.	We all went.
Тэд цөмөөрөө ирлээ.	All of them came.
Бид бүгдээрээ нэг нэгийг авсан.	All of us took one.
Надад бүгдээрээ хэрэгтэй.	I need them all.

When it is the object, in the accusative; or in any other case, it simply adds the necessary case ending, often with the particle нь (“of them”):

Би бүгдийг нь авъя.	I'll take all of them.
Багш бүгдээс нь асуув.	The teacher asked them all.

4) “-ish” adjectives

There is a suffix added to adjectives and numbers which slightly modifies their meaning. We shall deal with the adjectives first.

a) adjectives. When the suffixes -хан⁴ and -втар⁴ are added to adjectives it usually changes the meaning in the same way as the English suffix -ish. There are some notable exceptions to this rule, which will be dealt with later. Here are some more regular examples:

ногоон	green	ногоохон, ногоовтор	quite green, greenish
улаан	red	улаахан, улаавтар	quite red, reddish

хөх	blue	хөх хон , хөхө втөр	quite blue, blue ish
бага	small	бага хан , багав тар	quite small, small ish
том	big	том хон , томов тор	quite big, bigg ish

It should be obvious from the table what is happening here. It must be said that the process works best with colours. What happens with some other adjectives is that the meaning changes very little if at all, and some adjectives are even more common in their diminutive form:

цэвэр	clean	цэвэр хэн	clean
сэрүүн	cool	сэрүү хэн	cool
хямд	cheap	хямд хан	cheap
нам	low, short	нам хан	low, short (stature)

What this table shows is adjectives the meaning of which has not been changed by the addition of the suffix at all, and which have been introduced into previous vocabulary lists and texts in their diminutive form because they are more commonly used and will be more commonly heard in this form.

The word which does not conform to either of the above models for the use of this suffix is сайн—“good”. With the suffix added it becomes сай**хан**—“beautiful”. When the suffix is added to this adjective, the meaning is not weakened to “quite good” or “goodish” as is the case with most adjectives, nor yet does it remain the same as with the second group of examples. In fact the meaning has been strengthened from merely “good” to positively “beautiful”. There are words for “quite good” in Mongolian; one of these is овоо which means “good enough”, the other of which is гайгүй, which could be translated also as “not bad”:

-Өнөөдрийн хурал ямар байсан бэ?	How was today's meeting?
Гайгүй, гайгүй.	O.K., not bad.
-Энэ гутал ямар байна?	How are these boots?
-Овоо, зохиж байна.	They're O.K., they suit you.
-Овоо, таарч байна.	They're O.K., they fit.

5) Modifying numbers

а) -хан⁴. When the -хан⁴ suffix is added to a number, it also diminishes the meaning. It changes it from a straight five, for example, to “only” five. Here are some more examples in sentences:

Долоо хон минут үлдэж байна.	We've only got seven minutes left.
Манай байр гурав хан өрөөтэй.	Our flat has only three rooms.
Хоёр хон хүн ирлээ.	Only two people came.

In this respect, the -хан⁴ suffix can be said to fulfil the same role as the particle л that we met earlier. Although the suffix can be added to any number, it tends to be used much more for numbers between one and ten.

This suffix is only very rarely found added to нэг. Instead the word ганц is used, making ганцхан—“single, alone, only one”.

b) -аад⁴. While the -хан⁴ suffix seems to modify the meaning of numbers downwards, the suffix -аад⁴ is more general, and means ‘roughly’. It is only used for numbers greater than ten, and for multiples of ten. Here is how it works in a few sentences:

Манай багш гучаад настай. Our teacher is about thirty.

Мянгаад жилийн өмнө. About a thousand years ago.

Гурван зуугаад хүн. About three hundred people.

Далаад онд. In the Seventies.

c) орчим. This word goes between the number and the article being counted. It means literally “about” or “in the region of”, and therefore indicates that the number given is a rough idea only, and neither that it is probably more nor that it is probably less. Because it comes between the number itself and the thing counted, and does not count as a noun itself, the -н stem usually used with numbers when they are used to count something is dropped off. It can be used for any number high or low. Here are a few examples in sentences:

Тэр хорь орчим настай. He is about twenty.

Энэ байшинд хоёрзуу орчим хүнсуудаг. Roughly two hundred people live in this building.

Энэ үйлдвэрт зуу орчим хүн ажилладаг. About a hundred people work in this factory.

DRILLS

i) In the following sentences, put the underlined words into the reciprocal.

EXAMPLE:

Ахын машин нэг машинтай мөргөсөн.

Ахын машин нэг машинтай мөргөлдсөн.

a) Дорж найз нартайгаа зодсон.

b) Дулмаа, Бат хоёр дандаа маргадаг.

c) Баатар эхнэртэйгээ үнсэв.

d) Олон сайн бөхчүүд Нааднаар барьдаг.

e) -Чи олон хүнтэй зоддог уу?

f) -Үгүй, сая ганцхан хүнтэй зодсон.

ii) Using the word in brackets to complete the following sentences, putting them into the right directional form.

EXAMPLE:

Гүүрэн (дээр) явбал ойрхон.

Гүүрэн дээгүүр явбал ойрхон.

- a) Манай байшингийн (ар) их өндөр мод бий.
- b) Эндээс (хойно) явбал нэг гол бий.
- c) Шатаар (дээр) гарав.
- d) Замын (хажуу) нэг үнээ явж байна.
- e) Гэрийн (баруун) нэг нохой унтаж байна.
- f) Сургуулийн хашаан (дотор) хүүхдүүд гүйж байна.
- g) Байшингийн (өмнө) нэг машин явав.
- h) Сургуулийн (хойно) явбал багшид харагдахгүй.

iii) Replace “өмнө” and “дараа” with “наана” and “цаана”.

EXAMPLE:

Шинэ жилийн өмнө би хөдөө явна.

Шинэ жилийн наана би хөдөө явна.

- a) -Наадамын дараа бүх ажлыг хийе гэж би бодож байна.
- b) -Болохгүй. Чи Наадамын өмнө дуусгах ёстой шүү.
- c) Баатар, хурлын өмнө даргатай ярилцаж байсан.
- d) Би хичээлийн өмнө энийг бичих хэрэгтэй.

iv) Change the underlined words in the following sentences with “бүгд” or “цөм”.

EXAMPLE:

Үүнийг хүн бүхэн мэднэ.

Үүнийг бүгдээрээ мэднэ.

- a) Багш хүн бүрээс асуув.
- b) Тэр кинонд хүн бүхэн дуртай.
- c) Бүх оюутан даалгавраа сайн хийжээ
- d) Энэ бүх адуу манай ахынх.
- e) Бүх автобус тийшээ явдаггүй.
- f) Хүүхэд бүр зураг зурав.
- g) Дулмаа бүх чихрийг идчихсэн байна.
- h) Хичээлийн дараа бнд нар Ганболдынд очив.

v) Change the underlined words in the following sentences into diminutive forms, adding either -втар⁴ or -хан⁴ where appropriate.

EXAMPLE:

Тэр улаан машин бол манайх.

Тэр улаавтар машин бол манайх.

Их сургуульд автобусаар гурван буудал яваад очно.

Их сургуульд автобусаар гуравхан буудал яваад очно.

- a) Тэр өндөр модон дээр шувууны үүр байдаг.
- b) Долгор бол дүүгээсээ залуу харагддаг.
- c) Энд арван чихэр байсан. Одоо хоёр л үлджээ.

- d) Манайх дөрвөн адуутай.
- e) Том нохой нь бага нохойг хөөв.
- f) Хөх пальтотой хүнийг хэн ч танихгүй.
- g) Түүнд бага архи өгөөрэй.
- h) Ийм л сүү байгаа юм уу?

EXERCISES

a) Answer the questions as they apply to you:

1. Танай байр хотын аль талд байна вэ?
2. Чи сургуульдаа хаагуур явж ирдэг вэ?
3. Энэ номыг хэзээ үзэж дуусах вэ?
4. Найз нартайгаа маргалддаг уу?
5. Хоёр хүн зодолдож байвал юу хийх вэ?
6. Танай байрны хажууд мод бий юү?
7. Өрөөний чинь цонх хаашаа хардаг вэ?
8. Ширээ чинь хаана байдаг вэ?
9. Ангийн самбар хаана байна вэ?
10. Чи гүүрэн дээгүүр явах дуртай юу?

b) Translate from English into Mongolian:

1. Along which side of the road did you come?
2. Do you sit on the right of Baatar?
3. -How did you get here? I didn't see you coming.
4. -I came under the bridge.
5. This picture is quite nice.
6. Do you know that man in a greenish hat?
7. -Can I have all the sweets?
8. -No, you can't. There are only four left. Let's have two each.
9. Yesterday I saw deer on the other side of the mountain.
10. There is only one tree behind the house, but three in the front.

c) Translate from Mongolian into English:

1. -Чи өчигдрийн киног ямар гэж бодож байна?
2. -Овоо сайн кино гэж бодож байна.
3. Замын зүүнтээ нэг дэлгүүр байдаг.
4. Манай сургуулийн хойно нэг өндөр мод бий.
5. Бат байшингийн цаагуур явсан, чи наагуур нь иржээ.
6. Урагшаа явбал Богд ууланд хүрнэ.
7. Баатар шатаар доошоо бууж яваа харагдсан.
8. Оюутнууд бүгдээрээ даалгавраа хийгээгүй байв.
9. Тэр хүн цагдаатай зодолдсон.
10. Бөхчүүд Цагаан сараар барилддаг.

SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

наадам	naadam	sport festival; Naada
хажуу	hajuu	side
гол	gol	river
дуусга-(дуусгах)	duusgah	to finish, end (trans)
лифт	lift	lift
хашаа(-н)	xashaa	fence
гүүр(-эн)	güür	bridge
татвар	tatvar	tax
гутал	gutal	boot; shoe
зохь-(зохих)	zohih	to suit
тааралд-(тааралдах)	taaraaldah	to bump into
таар-(таарах)	taarah	to fit, suit
үйлдвэр	üildver	factory; industry

INDEX OF MONGOLIAN INFLEXIONS

<i>Inflexion</i>	<i>Chapter and subsection</i>
-аа ⁴	3–4
аа ⁴	5–3
-аа ⁴	6–3
-аа ⁴	7–2
-аагүй ⁴	6–4
-аад ⁴	8–4
-аад ⁴	14–5
-аар ⁴	6–1
-аар ⁴	9–3
-аар ⁴	9–4
-аарай ⁴	8–6
-аас	4–3
-аат ⁴	8–6
-аач ⁴	8–6
-ав ⁴	3–2
-ад ⁴	3–1
-ах ⁴	1–2
-бал ⁴	10–1
бэ	2–4
-в	3–2
-вал ⁴	10–1
-втар ⁴	14–4
-вч	8–5
вэ	2–4
-г	1–3
-га ⁴	7–2
-гаа ⁴	7–2

-гаар ⁴	6-1
-гаас	4-3
-гд-	12-1
-гийн	2-2
-гүй	2-5
-д	3-1
-д	4-6
-д-	12-1
-даг ⁴	4-1
-дугаар ²	11-4
-ж	2-3
-жээ	9-5
-иа ⁴	3-4
-иад ⁴	8-4
-иар ⁴	6-1
-иас	4-3
-иж	2-3
-ий	2-2
-ийг	1-3
-ийн	2-2
-их	1-2
-лаа ⁴	8-2
-лга ⁻⁴	7-2
-лгүй	10-6
-лд-	14-1
луу ²	9-1
-лц-	13-1
-маар ⁴	12-5
-н	2-2
-на ⁴	1-2
-наас	4-3
нар	4-6

руу ²	9-1
-с	4-6
-саар ⁴	12-4
-сан ⁴	5-1
-т	3-1
-т-	12-1
-тай ³	5-2
-тал ⁴	11-1
уу ²	2-4
-ууд ²	4-6
-уул ⁻²	7-2
-уул ²	11-3
-уур	14-2
-х	1-2
-хан ⁴	13-4
-хан ⁴	14-4
-хан ⁴	14-5
-хлаар ⁴	9-3
-ч	2-3
-чих	9-5
-чууд ²	4-6
-чээ	9-5
-ш	14-2
-шаа ⁴	14-2
-ъё	8-1
-ъя	8-1
-ы	2-2
-ыг	1-3
-ын	2-2
-ье	8-1
юу ²	2-4
-я ⁴	8-1

MONGOLIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

А		амт	taste
аав	father	амттай	tasty
аваачих	to take	амьдрах	to live
авах	a) to take; b) to buy	анх(-ан)	first
авгай	wife	анчин	hunter
агуу	big, great	ар	back
авчирах	to bring	арагш	backwards
авчруулах	have s.b. bring s.b.	арав(-ан)	ten
адуу(-н)	horse(s), (male or female)	аравдугаар сар	October
		арай	a little
анги	a) class; b) classroom	арван нэгдүгээр сар	November
Англи	England	арван хоёрдугаар сар	December
англи	English		
айл	home, family, house, household	ард	behind
		архи(-н)	arkhi, Mongolian vodka, drink
айраг(-ан)	airag (kumiss, fermented mare's milk)	асуулт	question
		асуух	to ask
айх	to fear (+abl)	ах	elder brother
ажил	work	ах	years older
ажиллах	to work	аяга(-н)	cup, bowl
ажилчин	worker	аятай	comfortable
алаг	piebald		
алах	to kill	Б	
алдар	name (hon.)	баасан гариг	Friday
алх(-ан)	hammer, mallet	бага	little
аль(-ин)	which	бага сага	a little
амар	ease, peace, rest; easy, peaceful, restful	багтах	to fit, include, contain
		багш	teacher
амархан	easy	банк(-ан)	bank

амар тайван	peaceful; peacefully	байгуулах	cause to be, establish
амрах	to rest	байлгах	let be, leave be
байлдах	to fight	буух	to get out; dismount
байна уу	hello (on the phone)	буцаах	to send back
		буцах	to return, go/come back
байр(-ан)	building, flat; hostel		
		буцлах	to boil (intr.)
байх	to be	бүгд	all, everything
байх аа	perhaps, maybe	бүгдээрээ	everybody, all (of them, us, etc)
барагдах	to be finished		
барах	to finish	бүдүүн	fat, thick
баригдах	to be held, be arrested	бүр	each, every
		бүр	at all
барилдах	to wrestle	бүсгүй	female
барих	to hold	бүтэн сайн өдөр	Sunday
бариулах	to be eaten (by predators)	бүтэх	to be completed, be finished
баруун	right, west	бүтээлгэх	have s.t. made
бас	also, as well, too		(caus. of domth)
баян	rich	бүү	don't!
баярлалаа	thank you	бүх хүн	everybody
баярлах	be happy, get happy	бүх(-эн)	all
баяртай	goodbye	бэлтгэх	to prepare
би	I	бэлчээр	pasture
бид(-эн)	we	бэлэг	gift
бие	body, health	бямба гариг	Saturday
бие биеэ	each other	бяруу	two-year-old calf
билээ	was, were (past tense copula)		
		Г	
битгий	don't!	гааль	customs
бичих	to write	гадагш	out(wards),
богд	holy	гадаа	outside
Богд уул	name of a mountain	гадаад	outside, foreign

бодох	a) to think b) to calculate	гадуур	outer, outside
		гай	harm, danger
болгох	cause to become, make...	гайгүй	not bad, OK.
		гайхах	be surprised, astonished
боллоо	that's it		
болох	may, possible; to become	гайхуулах	to surprise, astonish; show off
бороо(-н)	rain	гал	fire
бороо орох	to rain	гал тогооны	
босох	to get up, rise	өрөө	kitchen
боть	volume	галт тэрэг(-эн)	train
бөх	a) wrestler b) strong, hard	ганц	only one, single
		ганцхан	one, only the one
буга	deer	гэр	hand
бусад	the others	гарах	a) to go out; leave b) to climb
буудал	stop, station		
бууз(-ан)	buuz, a kind of stuffed dumpling	гаргах	to get s.t out
		гахай	pig
гоё	beautiful	дөрөвдэх өдөр	Thursday
гоёл	ornament, decoration	дугаар	number (room, phone, etc.)
гол	river	дугтуй	envelope
гуай	Mr., Mrs., form of address	дунд	middle, central; among
гуанз	cafeteria	дулаахан	warm
гурав(-ан)	three	дуртай	to like (+dat)
гуравдахь өдөр	Wednesday	дутах	to lack, be without
гуравдугаар сар	March	дутуу	lacking, less
гурил	flour, dough	дуу(-н)	sound
гутал	boot; shoe	дуугарах	to make a noise
гүйх	to run	дуулах	to hear; sing
гүүр(-эн)	bridge	дуусах	to finish
гуанз	cafeteria	дуусгах	to finish, end (trans)
гэнэт	suddenly		
гэр	"ger", yurt; home	дүү	years younger

гэрэл зураг	photograph	дүү	younger brother/ sister
гэтэл	but		
гэх	to say	дүүрэр	full
		дэлгүүр	shop
Д		дэргэд	a) beside; b) by, alongside, near
даа ⁴	emphatic particle		
даалгавар	homework	дээр	on, above, over; better
даваа гариг	Monday		
дайн	war	дээш	up, upwards
дайрах	to bump into, hit (of car)		
		Е	
дайруулах	to be hit (by a car)	ер нь	in general
дандаа	always	ес(-өн)	nine
данх	kettle	есдүгээр сар	September
дараа	(postposition) after		
дарга	boss, chief, director	Ё	
дасгал	exercise	ёроол	base, bottom
дахиад	again	ёс(-он)	custom, habit
дахих	to repeat, do again	ёстой	necessary; must, have to
долдугаар сар	July		
долоо(-н)	seven		
долоо хоног	week	Ж	
доош	down(wards)	жаахан	a little
дор	under (postposition)	жаргал	happiness
		жаргах	be happy, get happy
дорно	east	жил	year
дорогш	downwards	жимс	fruit
дороо	immediately	жижиг	small
дотор	in, inside	жижигхэн	small(-ish)
дохих	to gesture	жижүүр	doorman, concierge
дөрөв(-өн)	four	жолооч	driver
дөрөвдүгээр сар	April		

З		идэх	to eat
за	(interjection) O.K etc.	илгээмж	parcel
		илүү	more, over, extra
заах	a) tell, teach; b) to show; point	ийм	like this
		ийш	this way
зав	free time, leisure	ирэх	to come
завтай	having free time, free	их	much; many; great; very, a lot
задлах	to open (bottles, packets etc.)	их сургууль	university
		нхэнх	most
задрах	to misbehave; be exposed, shown up	К	
загал	piebold	кино	film, cinema
зам	road, way		
залуу	young; young man	Л	
зарим	some	лам	lama, monk
заримдаа	sometimes	лифт	lift
зах	border, edge; collar (of clothes etc)	лхагва гариг	Wednesday
захиа(-н)	letter	М	
захирах	to govern	май	here, here you are
зовох	to suffer	мал	livestock
зогсох	to stop (intr.)	Малгай	hat
зогсоох	to stop (tr.)	маллах	to herd
зодолдох	to fight, brawl	малчин	herder, herdsman
зодох	to beat, thump	манай	our
зооглох	to eat, consume (hon.)	манайх	my house; my family
зохих	to suit	манайхан	my family, our
зөвхөн	only		people
зун	summer	маргааш	tomorrow
зураг	picture	маргалдах	to argue, squabble,
зурагтай	illustrated		quarrel
зурагчин	photographer	маргах	to argue, debate,

зурам	ground squirrel		dispute
зурач	to draw, to paint	мартах	to forget
зургаа(-н)	six	мах(-ан)	meat
зургадугаар сар	June	маш	very
зуу(-н)	hundred	машин	car
зүг	direction; towards	миний	my
зүүн	left, east	минь	my, of mine
зүүх	to wear (hanging on)	мод(-он)	tree, wood; wooden
		Монгол, монгол	Mongolia, Mongol
зэмлэх	to scold, chastise	мордох	to set off
зээр(-эн)	antelope, Mongolian gazelle	морь(-ин)	horse
		Москва	Moscow
		мөнгө(-н)	silver; money
И		мөргөлдөх	to collide, crash (of car)
ид	magic, sorcery		
мөргөх	to butt (like goat), headbutt	олох	to find
		он	year
мөчир	branch	онгойх	to open (door, window)
муу	bad		
мэдэх	to know	ордон	palace
мэдүүлэх	to let know, tell, inform	ор	bed
		орой	evening
мэндлэх	to greet	ороолт	scarf
мягмар гариг	Tuesday	ороох	to wrap around, rollup
мянга(-н)	thousand		
мэнд	health	Орос	Russia
		орос	Russian
Н		орох	to enter
наад	this	оруулах	to let in
наадам	sport festival; Naadam	орчим	about, roughly
		орчуулах	to translate

наана	this side	орхих	to leave behind
нааш	this way, to here, hither	очих	to go to, visit
		охин	daughter, girl
найм(-ан)	eight	охин дүү	younger sister
наймдугаар сар	August	охин найз	girlfriend
найз	friend	оюутан	student
намар	autumn		
нар(-ан)	sun	Ө	
нартай	sunny	өвдөх	to get ill, to hurt
нас	age, years	өвөл	winter
нас барах	to die, pass on	өвчин	sickness
нисэх	to fly	өвчтэй	ill
ногоон	green	өглөө(-н)	morning
ноднин	last year	өглөөний цай	breakfast
ноён	prince, noble man	өгөх	to give
ном	book	өдөр	day
номын сан	library	өдрийн хоол	lunch
нохой	dog	өлсөх	to feel/be hungry
нөгөө	that; the other	өмд	trousers
нөхөр	husband; comrade	өмнө	(postposition) before, in front of, ago
нутаг	land, homeland		
нүд(-эн)	eye		
нэг(-эн)	one	өмнө	front; south
иэгдүгээр сар	January	өмсөх	to wear, put on
нэгдэх өдөр	Monday	өлсөх	to feel/be hungry
ням гариг	Sunday	өнгөрөх	to pass, elapse; to go by
О		өнгөрсөн	past; last
огт	at all; really	өндөр	tall
одоо	now	өнөө	this
ойлгох	to understand	өнөөдөр	today
оймс	sock(s)	өнөө орой	tonight

олон	many	өнөөх	the one, the same
өөр	else, other, different	сүйлэх	to get a wife for dowry
өөрөө	one's self; oneself		
өөх(-өн)	fat	сүү(-н)	milk
өрнө	west	сэм	secretly
өрөө(-н)	room	сэмж	the fat around the
өчигдөр	yesterday		gut
П		Т	
пальто	coat, overcoat	та	you (formal)
пиво(-он)	beer	таарах	to fit, suit
пүрэв гариг	Thursday	тааралдах	to bump into
		тав	peace, comfort
Р		таваг	plate
руу/луу ²	towards	тав(-ан)	five
		таван хошуу мал	the Five Kinds of Animals, the five animals herded by the Mongols: horses, sheep, cattle, camels and goats.
С			
саарал	grey		
саах	to milk		
савсах	to rise, puff (steam, smoke, etc)		
сайд	minister, official	тагдахь өдөр	Friday
сайн	good, well	тавдугаар сар	May
сайн байна уу	how are you	тавих	to put
сайхан	beautiful, nice	тавтай	peacefully; comfortable
сайхан	"bon appetit",		
хооллоорой	enjoy!	тайван	peace; peaceful
самбар	blackboard, board	тайлах	to take off (clothes)
санаа(-н)	thought, idea	тал	steppe
санаа зовох	to worry	талх	bread
сан(-г)	store, storehouse	тамхи(-н)	tobacco
санах	to remember, think of	танайх	your house; your family

сандаг	chair		
санхүү	treasury; financial	танайхан	your people
сар	month	танил	acquaintance
саруул	bright; vast	таних	a) to recognise, be acquainted with s.b. b) to know (a person)
сая	just, just now		
сонин	a. newspaper; b. interesting		
сонин сайхан юу байна?	what's new?	танилцах	to get know
		танилцуулах	to introduce
сонсох	to hear, listen to	тараг	yogurt
сурах	to study, to learn	тарвага(-н)	marmot, prairie dog
сургах	to teach (cause to learn)	татах	to draw, pull; smoke
сургууль	school	татвар	tax
сурлага	study, studies	театр	theatre
суух	to sit; to live	тийм	yes
сүй	dowry, gifts to bride's family	тийнхүү	like that
		тийнхүүд	therefore
тийш	that way		урлаг art
тогоо(-н)	pan, pot		урих to invite
толгой	head		уруулах to be bitten (by a dog etc.)
толгой авахуулах	lose one's head		урьд ago, previously, once upon a time
том	big, large		
томоотой	good, quiet	ус	water
тоо(-н)	number	утас(-ан)	phone, wire; thread
тоо бодох	calculate	утасдах	to telephone
тооны машин	calculator	уул(-ан)	mountain, hill
төлөө	(postposition) for (the sake of)	уулзах	to meet
		уур	steam; anger
төмс(-өн)	potato	уурлах	to get angry (+dat.)
төрөх	to be born	уурлуулах	to make s.b. angry
төстэй	similar	ууртай	angry

тугал	calf	уух	to drink
тул	because	ухах	to dig
тулгах	to clink (glasses)	учир	reason
тус	help	учраас	because
тусгай	special		
туслах	to help	Ү	
тухай	about (postposition)	үг(-эн)	word, words
түүх	history	үгүй	no
тэгэх	to do that, do like that, do that way	үдээс хойш	in the afternoon, afternoon
тэгээд	then; and then	үдэшлэг	party, soiree
тэд	they	үе	time
тэднүүс	they (coll.)	үзүүлэх	to show
тэмээ(-н)	camel	үзэг	pen
тэнд	there; (over) there	үзэх	to see; try, experience
тэр	a) he, she, it; b) that	үлдэх	to stay behind, be left behind
У			
угаах	to wash	үйлдвэр	factory; industry
удаан	slow, slowly	үнэ	price
удалгүй	soon, not long after	үнэг(-эн)	fox
удахгүй	soon	үнэмлэх	ID card
улс	country, state	үнэтэй	expensive, pricey
умар	north	үнээ(-н)	cow (female)
унагаах	to drop, push over	үнсэх	to kiss
унах	to ride	үргэлж	always, often
унах	to fall	үс(-эн)	hair
унд	drink	үүр	nest
унтах	to sleep	үхэр	cow, cattle
унших	to read	үхэх	to die
урагш	southwards		
уран зураг	painted/drawn picture	Ф	
		Франц	France

урд	front, in front	□франц	French
Х		хойт	north
хаалга	door	хойш	north(wards)
хаалттай	closed	хоног	day (24 hrs)
хаан	Khan, emperor	хонох	to stay
хаана	where	хонь(-ин)	sheep
хаах	to close	хол	far
хаачих	to go where	хоол	food, meal
хааш	where to, whichway	хооллох	to eat (hon.)
		хонох	to spend a day and a night, stay the night
хаашаа	where to		
хавь	area		
хагас сайн өдөр	Saturday	хот	city, town; settlement
хажуу	side		
хажууд	(postposition) beside	хошуу(-н)	banner (an admin. division), area, land
хайр	love		
хайрцаг	box	хошуу	kind, sort
хайртай	in love with (+dat)	хөөгдөх	thrown out
хайх	to look for	хөдөө(-н)	countryside
халуун	hot	хөөх	to chase; expel
хамаа	relation	хөөе	an interjection, hoy!
хамаагүй	doesn't matter, never mind		
		хөөрхий	poor, poor thing
хамгийн	most, -est	хөх	blue
хана	wall	хувцас(-ан)	clothes
ханиад	a cold, flu	хувьсгал	revolution
хар	black	хурал	meeting, conference
харагдах	to be seen		
харандаа(-н)	pencil	хурдан	quick, quickly
харах	to look (at)	хуцах	to bark (like dog)
харилцах	to correspond	хуучин	old

харин	but	хуушуур	huushuur, a kind of fried stuffed pancake
харин ээ	hm, I don't know		
хариулах	to tend, look after (of herds)	хүйтэн	cold
хариулах	to answer	хүлээх	to wait (for)
харих	to return, go home	хүмүүс	people
харьцах	to relate to	хүн	person
хатан	queen, noble woman	хүн бүхэн	everybody
		хүрэх	to reach, get to
хашаа(-н)	fence	хүү	son
хийх	a) to do, make b) to put (in)	хүүхэд	child
		хэдийд	when
хичээл	class, lesson	хэд(-эн)	how many
хоёр	two	хэдэн	several
хоёрдахь өдөр	Tuesday	хэзээ	when (question)
хоёрдугаар сар	February	хэл	language; tongue
хоёул	both	хэлэх	to say, speak
хойно	north; behind; after	хэлэлцэх	to discuss
хэмээх	to say	чихэр	sugar, sweets
хэн	who	чоно(-н)	wolf
хэрэв	if	чулуу(-н)	stone
хэрэггүй	must not, need not		
хэрэглэх	to use	III	
хэрэгтэй	necessary, need to	шар	yellow
хэрээ(-н)	crow	шарга	bay (colour)
хэцүү	difficult	шарах	to fry
хээр	chestnut (colour)	шат(-ан)	stairs
		шатар	chess
Ц		шатардах	to play chess
цаана	that side	шивэгчин	servant-girl
цаас	paper	шиг	like, similar to
цааш	that way, to there, thither	шид	magic, sorcery

		шил(-эн)	bottle, glass
цаг	time, hour	шинэ	new
цагаан	white	ширээ(-н)	a) table b) throne
Цагаан сар	Mongolian New Year (usu. in Feb.; lit. “white moon”)	Шотланд	Scotland
		шотланд	Scottish
цагдаа	police	шөнө	night
цахдах	be satisfied, sated, full up	шөл	soup
		шувуу(-н)	bird
цай	tea	шууд	straight away, immediately
цай чанах	to make tea		
цангах	to be thirsty	шуудан	post, post office
цас(-ан)	snow	шүү	emphatic particle, “isn’t it”, etc.
цирк	circus		
цонх	window	шүүгээ(-н)	cupboard
цөм	all, everything; each one	шүүрэх	to grab, seize
цүнх(-эн)	bag	Э	
цэвэрлэх	to clean	эгч	elder sister
цэвэрхэн	clean, tidy	элэг	liver
цэрэг	soldier	элч(-ин)	messenger, ambassador
Цэцэрлэг	name of a town (= “garden”)		
		элчин сайдын	embassy
		яам	
Ч		эм	a) female; b) medicine
ч	even		
чавганц	old lady	эмэгтэй	female, woman
чадах	can, to be able	эмч	doctor
чанах	to boil (tr., tea, soup, etc)	энэ	this
		эрдэнэ	jewel, gem
чимэглэл	ornament, decoration	эрдэнийн	precious
		эрт	early
чингэх	to do this, do like this	эрүүл	health
		эvvл мэндийн	

чинь	your, of yours	төлөө	cheers
ээж	mother, mum	Я	
эх	mother	яам(-ан)	office, ministry
эхлэх	to begin, start	яасан	how (lit 'done what')
эхнэр	wife		
эх(-эн)	begining, start	яасан сайн	how nice/good
эцэг	father	яах	to do what?, how todo?
эцэс	end, final. last		
ээ	(interjection) oh	явах	to go
Ю		явуулах	to send
юм	(copula) be	яг	exactly, right
юм(-ан)	thing	ядрах	to be tired
юмгүй	nothing	ядуу	poor
	(here) want to, intend to	ялах	to win, defeat, bevictorious
юмсан		ялагдах	
юмсан	(here) was, were (past tense copula)		to lose, be defeated
юм чинь	because	ямаа(-н)	goat
юу гэвэл	because	ямар	what kind of
юу гэж	why (do you ask)	ярилцах	to talk, talk with, converse
юу(-н)	what	ярих	to speak, talk

ENGLISH-MONGOLIAN VOCABULARY

A

(be) able	чадах
about	орчим
about (<i>postposition</i>)	тухай
above	дээр
acquaintance	танил
(be) acquainted with s.b.	таних, танилцах
after (<i>postposition</i>)	дараа, хойш
afternoon	үдээс хойш
again	дахиад
age	нас(-ан)
ago (<i>postposition</i>)	өмнө, урьд
airag	айраг(-ан)
all	бүх, бүгд, цөм
all (of them, us, etc)	бүгдээрээ
alongside	дэргэд
also	бас
always	дандаа, үргэлж
ambassador	элч(-ин)
among	дунд
anger	уур
angry	ууртай
get angry (+dat.)	уурлах
make s.b. angry	уурлуулах
answer	хариулах
antelope	зээр(-эн)
April	дөрөвдүгээр сар
area	хавь
argue	маргах, ах

arkhi	архи(-н)
arrest	барих
(be) arrested	баригдах
art	урлаг
ask	асуух
astonish	гайхуулах
(be) astonished	гайхах
at all	бүр, огт
August	наймдугаар сар
autumn	намар
B	
back	ар, хойт
backwards	арагш, хойш
bad	муу
bag	цүнх(-эн)
bank	банк(-ан)
banner	хошуу(-н)
bark (like dog)	хуцах
base	ёроол
bay (colour)	шарга
be	а) байх б) (<i>copula</i>) юм
beat	зодох
beautiful	гоё, сайхан
because	тул, учраас, юм чинь, юу гэвэл
become	болох
bed	ор
beer	пиво(-он)
before (<i>postposition</i>)	өмнө, урд
begin	эхлэх
begining	эх(-эн)
beside (<i>postposition</i>)	дэргэд, хажууд
better	дээр

big	том
bird	шувуу(-н)
(be) bitten	уруулах
black	хар
blackboard	самбар
blue	хөх
board	самбар
body	бие
boil	а) (<i>intr.</i>) буцлах б) (<i>tr.</i>) чанах
book	ном
“bon appetit”	сайхан хооллоорой
boot	гутал
border	зах
(be) born	төрөх
boss	дарга
both	хоёул
bottle	шил(-эн)
bottom	ёроол
bowl	аяга(-н)
box	хайрцаг
branch	мөчир
brawl	зодолдох
bread	талх
breakfast	өглөөний цай
bridge	гүүр(-эн)
bright	саруул
bring	авчирах
brother	ах, дүү
building	байр(-ан)
bump into	тааралдах
bump into (hit)	дайрах
but	гэтэл, харин

butt (like goat)	мөргөх
buuz	бууз(-ан)
buy	авах
by	дэргэд
C	
cafeteria	гуанз
calculate	(тоо) бодох
calculator	тооны машин
calf	тугал
calf (two-year-old)	бяруу
camel	тэмээ(-н)
can	чадах
car	машин
cattle	үхэр
cause to be	байгуулах
central	дунд
chair	сандаал
chase	хөөх
chastise	зэмлэх
cheers	эрүүл мэндийн төлөө
chess	шатар
chestnut (colour)	хээр
chief	дарга
child	хүүхэд
cinema	кино
circus	цирк
city	хот
class	анги, хичээл
classroom	анги
clean <i>a, v</i>	цэвэрхэн, цэвэрлэх
climb	гарах
clink (glasses)	тулгах
close	хаах

closed	хаалттай
clothes	хувцас(-ан)
coat	пальто
cold	хүйтэн, ханиад
collar (of clothes)	зах
collide (of car)	мөргөлдөх
come	ирэх
come back	буцах
comfort	тав
comfortable	аятай, тавтай
complete	бүтээх, хийх
(be) completed	бүтэх
comrade	нөхөр
concierge	жижүүр
conference	хурал
consume	зооглох (<i>hon.</i>)
contain	багтах
converse	ярилцах
correspond	харилцах
country	улс
countryside	хөдөө(-н)
cow	үнээ(-н), үхэр
crash (of car)	мөргөлдөх
crow	хэрээ(-н)
cup	аяга(-н)
cupboard	шүүгээ(-н)
custom	ёс(-он)
customs	гааль
D	
danger	гай
daughter	охин
day	өдөр, хоног

debate	маргах
December	арван хоёрдугаар сар
decoration	чимэглэл, гоёл
deer	буга
defeat	ялах
(be) defeated	ялагдах
die	үхэх, нас барах
different	өөр
difficult	хэцүү
dig	ухах
direction	зүг
director	дарга
discuss	хэлэлцэх
dismount	буух
dispute	маргах
do	хийх
do like that	тэгэх
do like this	чингэх
(to) do what?	яах
doctor	эмч
doesn't matter	хамаагүй
dog	нохой
don't!	битгий, бүү
door	хаалга
doorman	жижүүр
dough	гурил
down	доош
downwards	дорогш, доош
dowry	сүй
draw	зурах
drink <i>n, v</i>	а) унд b) архи(-н)д c) уух

driver	жолооч
drop	унагаах
E	
each	бүр
each one	бүгд, цөм
each other	бие биеэ
early	эрт
ease	амар
east	дорно, зуун
easy	амар, амархан
eat	хооллох, идэх, зооглох
(be) eaten	идүүлэх, бариулах
edge	зах
egg	өндөг(-өн)
eight	найм(-ан)
elder	ах, ахмад
else	өөр
embassy	элчин сайдын яам
emperor	хаан
end <i>n, v(trans)</i>	эцэс, дуусгах
England	Англи
English	англи
enter	орох
envelope	дугтуй
establish	байгуулх
even	ч
evening	орой
every	бүр
everybody	бүгдээрээ, хүн бүхэн
everything	бүгд, цөм
exactly	яг
exercise	дасгал
expel	хөөх

expensive	үнэтэй
experience	үзэх
(be) exposed	задрах
extra	илүү
eye	нүд(-эн)
F	
factory	үйлдвэр
fall	унах
family	айл
far	хол
fat <i>n, a</i>	өөх(-өн), бүдүүн
father	эцэг, аав
fear (+abl)	айх
February	хоёрдугаар сар
female	эмэгтэй
fence	хашаа(-н)
fight	байлдах, зодолдох
film	кино
final	эцэс
financial	санхүү
find	олох
finish	а) барах, дуусахд b) (<i>trans</i>) дуусгах
(be) finished	барагдах, бүтэх
fire	гал
first	анх(-ан)
fit	багтах, таарах
five	тав(-ан)
flat	байр(-ан)
flour	гурил
flu	ханиад
fly	нисэх
food	хоол

for (<i>postposition</i> the sake of)	төлөө
forget	мартах
four	дөрөв(-өн)
fox	үнэг(-эн)
France	Франц
free	зав
French	франц
Friday	баасан гариг, тавдахь өдөр
friend	найз
front	өмнө, урд
fruit	жимс
fry	шарах
full	дүүрэн
full up	цадах
G	
gem	эрдэнэ
(in) general	ер нь
ger	гэр
gesture	дохих
get out	буух
get s.t out	гаргах
get to	хүрэх
get up	босох
gift	бэлэг
girl	бүсгүй, охин, хүүхэн
girlfriend	охин найз
give	өгөх
go	явах, очих
go home	харих
go out	гарах
go where	хаачих
goat	ямаа(-н)
good	сайн, томоотой

goodbye	баяртай
govern	захирах
glass	шил(-эн)
grab	шүүрэх
great	агуу, их
green	ногоон
greet	мэндлэх
grey	саарал
Н	
habit	ёс(-он)
hair	үс(-эн)
hammer	алх(-ан)
hand	гэр
happiness	жаргал, баяр
(be) happy	жаргах, баярлах
get happy	жаргах, баярлах
hard	бөх
harm	гай
hat	малгай
have to	ёстой
have s.b. bring	авчруулах
have s.t. made	(ёйгыв үө бүтэх) бүтээлгэх
he	тэр
head	толгой
headbutt	мөргөх
health	эрүүл мэнд
hear	дуулах, сонсох
(be) held	баригдах
hello (<i>on the phone</i>)	байна уу
help <i>n, v</i>	тус, туслах
herd	маллах
herder	малчин
herdsman	малчин

here	энд
here you are	май
hill	уул(-ан)
history	түүх
hit (of car)	дайрах
(be) hit (by a car)	дайруулах
hither	нааш
hm, I don't know	харин ээ
hold	барих
holy	богд
home	айл, гэр
homeland	нутаг
homework	даалгавар
horse	адуу(-н), морь(-ин)
hostel	байр(-ан)
hot	халуун
hour	цаг
house	байшин, байр(-ан)
household	айл
housework	гэрийн ажил
how	яаж
how are you	сайн байна уу
how many	хэд(-эн)
how nice/good	яасан сайн
how to do?	яах
hoy! (<i>an interjection</i>)	хөөе
hundred	зуу(-н)
(be) hungry	өлсөх
hunter	анчин
hurt	өвдөх
husband	нөхөр
I	

I	би
ID card	үнэмлэх
idea	санаа(-н)
if	хэрэв
ill	өвчтэй
get ill	өвдөх
illustrated	зурагтай
immediately	шууд, дороо
in	дотор
include	багтах
industry	үйлдвэр
inform	мэдүүлэх
inside	дотор
intend to	юмсан
interesting	сонин
introduce	танилцуулах
invite	урих
“isn’t it” (<i>emphatic particle</i>)	шүү
it	тэр
J	
January	нэгдүгээр сар
jewel	эрдэнэ
July	долдугаар сар
June	зургадугаар сар
just	яг, сая
just now	сая
K	
kettle	данх
Khan	хаан
kill	алах
kiss	үнсэх
kitchen	гал тогооны өрөө
know	мэдэх, таних

get to know	танилцах
L	
lack	дутах
lacking	дутуу
lama	лам
land	нутаг
language	хэл
large	том
last	эцэс
last year	ноднин
learn	сурах, мэдэх
leave be	байлгах
leave (behind)	орхих, үлдээх
leave (go)	гарах
left	зүүн
leisure	зав
less	дутуу
lesson	хичээл
let be	байлгах
letter	захиа(-н)
library	номын сан
lift	лифт
like	дуртай
like (similar)	шиг
like that	тийнхүү
listen (to)	сонсох
little	бага
a little	арайь бага сага, жаахан
live	амьдрах
liver	элэг
livestock	мал
look after (of herds)	хариулах
look (at)	харах

look for	хайх
lose	ялагдах
love	хайр
in love with (+dat)	хайртай, дурлах
lunch	өдрийн хоол
М	
magic	ид, шид
make	хийх
mallet	алх(-ан)
many	олон, их
March	гүравдугаар сар
marmot	тарвага(-н)
May	тавдугаар сар
may	болох
maybe	байх аа
meal	хоол
meat	мах(-ан)
medicine	эм
meet	уулзах
meeting	хурал
messenger	элч(-ин)
middle	дунд
milk	а) <i>п</i> Бдсүү(-н) б) <i>ү</i> саах
(of) mine	минь
minister	сайд
ministry	яам(-ан)
misbehave	задрах
Monday	даваа гариг, нэгдэх өдөр
money	мөнгө(-н)
Mongol	монгол
Mongolia	Монгол
Mongolian New Year	Цагаан сар

monk	лам
month	сар
more	илүү
morning	өглөө(-н)
Moscow	Москва
most, -est	ихэнх, хамгийн
mother	эх, ээж
mountain	уул(-ан)
Mr.	гуай
Mrs.	гуай
much	их
must	ёстой
must not	хэрэгтүү
my	миний, минь
N	
Naadam	наадам
name (hon.)	алдар
near	дэргэд
necessary	ёстой хэрэгтэй
need not	хэрэггүй
need to	хэрэгтэй
nest	үүр
never mind	хамаагүй
new	шинэ
newspaper	сонин
nice	сайхан
night	шөнө
nine	ес(-өн)
no	үгүй
nobleman	ноён
noblewoman	хатан
north	умар, хойт
north(wards)	хойш

not	-гүй
not bad	гайгүй
not long after	удалгүй
nothing	юмгүй
November	арван нэгдүгээр сар
now	одоо
number	тоо(-н)
number (room, phone, etc.)	дугаар
O	
October	аравдугаар сар
office	яам(-ан)
official	сайд
often	дандаа, үргэлж
oh (<i>interjection</i>)	ээ
O.K. (<i>interjection</i>)	за
OK. (not bad)	гайгүй
old	хөгшин, хуучин
older (years of age)	ах
on	дээр
once upon a time	урьд
one	иэг(-эн)
oneself	өөрөө
only	зөвхөн
only the one	ганцхан
open (bottles, packets etc.)	задлах
open (door, window)	онгойх, онгойлгох
ornament	чимэглэл, гоёл
other	өөр
others	бусад
our	манай
outer	гадуур
outside	гадуур, гадаа

outside (foreign)	гадаад
outside (outwards)	гадагш
over (location)	дээр
over (<i>superfluous</i>)	илүү
overcoat	пальто
P	
paint	зурах
painted picture	уран зураг
palace	ордон
pan	тогоо(-н)
paper	цаас
parcel	илгээмж
party	үдэшлэг
pass on	нас барах
pass the night	хонох
pasture	бэлчээр
peace	амар, тав
peaceful	амар, тайван
peacefully	амар, тайван, тавтай
pen	үзэг
pencil	харандаа(-н)
people	хүмүүс
perhaps	байх аа
person	хүн
piebald	алаг, шарга
picture	зураг
pig	гахай
phone	утас(-ан)
photograph	гэрэл зураг
photographer	зурагчин
plate	таваг
play	тоглох
point	заах

police	цагдаа
poor	ядуу, хөөрхий
possible	болох
precious	эрдэнийн
prepare	бэлтгэх
previously	урьд
price	үнэ
pricey	үнэтэй
prince	ноён
post	шуудан
potato	төмс(-өн)
puff (steam, smoke, etc)	савсах
pull	татах
push over	унагаах
put	тавихд хийх
put on	өмсөх
Q	
quarrel	маргалдах
queen	хатан
question	асуулт
quick	хурдан
quickly	хурдан
quiet	томоотой
R	
rain <i>n, v</i>	бороо(-н), бороо орох
reach	хүрэх
read	унших
reason	учир
recognise	таних
relate to	харьцах
relation	хамаа
remember	санах
repeat	дахих

rest <i>n, v</i>	амар, амрах
restful	амар
return	харих, буцах
revolution	хувьсгал
rich	баян
ride	унах
right	яг
right (to the)	баруун
rise	босох
rise (steam, smoke, etc)	савсах
river	гол
road	зам
roll up	ороох
room	өрөө(-н)
roughly	орчим
run	гүйх
Russia	Орос
Russian	орос
S	
(be) sated	цадах
(be) satisfied	цадах
Saturday	бямба гариг, хагас сайн өдөр
say	гэх, хэлэх, хэмээх
scarf	ороолт
school	сургууль
scold	зэмлэх
Scotland	Шотланд
Scottish	шотланд
secretly	сэм
see	үзэх
(be) seen	харагдах
seize	шүүрэх

send	явуулах
send back	буцаах
September	есдүгээр сар
servant	зарц, шивэгчин
set off	мордох
settlement	хот
seven	долоо(-н)
several	хэдэн
she	тэр
sheep	хонь(-ин)
shoe	гутал
shop	дэлгүүр
show	заах, үзүүлэх
show off	гайхуулах
shown up	задрах
sickness	өвчин
side	хажуу
silver	мөнгө(-н)
similar	төстэй, шиг
sing	дуулах
single	ганц
sister	эгч
six	зургаа(-н)
sleep	унтах
slow, slowly	удаан
small	жижиг
small(-ish)	жижигхэн
smoke	татах
snow	цас(-ан)
sock(s)	оймс
soiree	үдэшлэг
soldier	цэрэг
some	зарим

sometimes	заримдаа
son	хүү
soon	удалгүй, удахгүй
sorcery	ид, шид
sound	дуу(-н)
soup	шөл
south	өмнө
speak	хэлэх, ярих
special	тусгай
spend	өнгөрөөх, үрэх
sport festival	наадам
squabble	маргалдах
stairs	шат(-ан)
start <i>n, v</i>	эх(-эн), эхлэх
state	улс
station	буудал
stay behind	үлдэх
stay the night	хонох
steam	уур
steppe	тал
stone	чулуу(-н)
stop	буудал
stop (<i>intr., tr.</i>)	зогсохд зогсоох
store	сан(-г)
storehouse	сан(-г)
student	оюутан
studies	сурлага
study <i>n, v</i>	сурлага, сурах
straight away	шууд
strong	бөх
suddenly	гэнэт
suffer	зовох
sugar	чихэр

suit	зохих, таарах
summer	зун
sun	нар(-ан)
Sunday	ням гариг, бүтэн сайн өдөр
sunny	нартай
surprise	гайхуулах
(be) surprised	гайхах
sweets	чихэр
T	
table	ширээ(-н)
take	авах, аваачих
take off (clothes)	тайлах
talk	ярих, ярилцах
tall	өндөр
taste	амт
tasty	амттай
tax	татвар
tea	цай
teach	заах, сургах
teacher	багш
telephone	утасдах
tell	хэлэх, мэдүүлэх, заах
ten	арав(-ан)
tend (herds)	хариулах
tidy	цэвэрхэн
time	цаг, үе
(be) tired	ядрах
thank you	баярлалаа
that	тэр, нөгөө
that's it	боллоо
that side	цаана
that way	тийш, цааш

theatre	театр
then	тэгээд
there	тэнд
therefore	тийнхүүд
they	тэд, тэднүүс
thick	бүдүүн
thing	юм(-ан)
think	бодох, санах
(be) thirsty	цангах
this	энэ, наад, өнөө
this side	наана
this way	нааш, ийш
thither	цааш
thought	санаа(-н), бодол
thousand	мянга(-н)
thread	утас(-ан)
three	гурав (гурван)
throne	ширээ(-н)
thrown out	хөөгдөх
thump	зодох
Thursday	пүрэв гариг, дөрөвдөх өдөр
tobacco	тамхи(-н)
today	өнөөдөр
tomorrow	маргааш
tongue	хэл
tonight	өнөө орой
too	бас
towards	руу/луу ² , зүг
town	хот
train	галт тэрэг(-эн)
translate	орчуулах
treasury	санхүү
tree	мод

trousers	өмд
try	үзэх
Tuesday	мягмар гариг, хоёрдахь өдөр
two	хоёр
U	
under (<i>postposition</i>)	дор
understand	ойлгох
university	их сургууль
up	дээш
upwards	дээш
use	хэрэглэх
V	
vast	саруул
very	их, маш
(be) victorious	ялах
visit	очих
vodka	архи(-н)
volume	боть
W	
wait	хүлээх
wall	хана
want	хүсэх
war	дайн
warm	дулаахан
wash	угаах
water	ус
way	зам
we	бид(-эн)
wear	өмсөх, зүүх
Wednesday	лхагва гариг, гуравдахь өдөр
week	долоо хоног
well	сайн
west	өрнө, баруун

window	цонх
winter	өвөл
wire	утас(-ан)
without	-гүй
(be) without	дутах
what	юу(-н)
what kind of	ямар
what's new?	сонин сайхан юу байна?
when	хэзээ, хэдийд
where	хаана
where to	хааш(аа)
which	аль(-ин)
which way	хааш
white	цагаан
who	хэн
why	яагаад, юу гэж
wife	авгай, эхнэр
win	ялах
wolf	чоно(-н)
wood	мод(-он)
wooden	модон
word	үг(-эн)
work <i>n, v</i>	ажил, ажиллах
worker	ажилчин
worry	санаа зовох
wrap	ороох
wrestle	барилдах
write	бичих
Y	
year	жил, он
yellow	шар
yes	тийм

yesterday	өчигдөр
yogurt	тараг
young	залуу
younger	дүү
your	чинь, чиний
your people	танайхан
yurt	гэр

KEYS TO DRILLS AND EXERCISES

Chapter One

TEXT

How are you? I am an Englishman. This is my friend. He is also an Englishman. He is a student. He is a good student. He studies Mongolian.

This is my house. This is my room. My room is large, warm and clean. Walls of my room are yellow. It is a window. There is a big tree outside. That tree is green. My car is there too. My car is black and also small. That small, black car is my car.

Today I will buy a beautiful book. Tonight I will read this book. Tomorrow I will see a new film. That is a nice English film.

DRILLS

i)

авна, уншина, үзнэ, өмөснө, олно.

ii)

Би монгол хэл сурна.

Би кино үзнэ.

Тэр ор авна.

Миний найз ус олно.

Тэр хар өмд өмөснө.

iii)

Тэр машин хар байна.

Тэр хар машин байна.

Тэр англи хүн том байна.

Тэр том англи хүн байна.

Тэр ном сайхан байна.

Тэр сайхан ном байна.

Тэр жимс ногоон байна.

Тэр ногоон жимс байна.

EXERCISES

a)

1. Өнөөдөр би хар өмд өмөснө.

2. Маргааш би жимс авна.
3. Миний ор том.
4. Тэр сайн оюутан.
5. Тэр монгол хэл сайн сурна.
6. Өнөө орой би англи кино үзнэ.
7. Энэ сайн ном.
8. Энэ ном сайн.
9. Тэр сайн хүн.
10. Миний анги дулаахан.

b)

1. This book is good.
2. This is a good book.
3. Today I shall wear my black trousers.
4. My car is big.
5. Green fruit is bad.
6. Mongolian water is nice.
7. He is a bad student.
8. This classroom is warm.
9. That student is bad.
10. Today is a beautiful day.

Chapter Two

TEXT

Baatar's wife is Dulmaa. Dulmaa's husband is Baatar. Dulmaa and Baatar are herders. Their ger is a very big, white ger. Baatar is herding livestock. Dulmaa is doing housework. There is much housework. Dulmaa is tidying up her ger.

Baatar is not doing housework. He is herding state livestock. Baatar is riding a horse.

Now Dulmaa is having a meal. She eats mutton, she does not eat pork.

- What is Dulmaa doing?
- She is doing housework.
- What is Baatar doing?
- He is herding livestock.
- Whose livestock he is herding?
- He is herding state livestock.
- Is Dulmaa eating?
- Yes, she is eating.
- What kind of food she is eating?
- She is eating meat.
- What sort of meat she is not eating?
- She is not eating pork.
- Will Baatar eat any food tonight or not?

-He will.

DRILLS

i)

Тэр Дулмаагийн нохойг авна.
Миний дүү улсын мал маллана.
Нохой Баатарын хоолыг иднэ.
Оюутны ажил сайн.

ii)

сурч, үзэж, олж, цэвэрдэж, унаж, явж, уншиж, өмөсч, хийж, маллаж, идэж
бичиж.

iii)

- a) Нохой мах идэж байна.
- b) Оюутан монгол хэл сурч байна.
- c) Тэр сайхан ном бичиж байна.
- d) Малчин морь унаж байна.
- e) Багш хар өмд өмөсч байна.

iv)

- a) Миний дүү жимс идэж байна.
My younger brother will eat fruit.
My younger brother is eating fruit.
- b) Та юу хийж байна вэ?
What will you do?
What are you doing?
- c) Та ямар ном уншиж байна вэ?
What book will you read?
What book are you reading?
- d) Даваа морь унаж байна.
Davaa will ride a horse.
Davaa is riding a horse.

v)

- a) Та маргааш хоол хийх үү?
Хэн маргааш хоол хийх вэ?
Та маргааш юу хийх вэ?
- b) Баатар мал маллаж байна уу?
Баатар юу хийж байна вэ?
Хэн мал маллаж байна вэ?
- c) Багш шинэ ном бичиж байна уу?

Багш ямар ном бичиж байна вэ?

Хэн шинэ ном бичиж байна вэ?

d) Оюутан англи хэл сурч байна уу?

Хэн англи хэл сурч байна вэ?

Оюутан юу сурч байна вэ?

vi)

a) Багш сайн ном бичихгүй байна.

b) Энэ оюутан их сайн сурахгүй байна.

c) Маргааш би гэрийн ажил хийхгүй.

d) Би өнөөдөр монгол кино үзэхгүй.

EXERCISES

b)

1. Миний нохой их том.

2. Цэрмаагийн гэр их цэвэрхэн.

3. Мягмар морь унаж байна, Баатар морь унахгүй байна.

4. Монгол их том улс.

5. Энэ хэний нохой вэ?

6. Та гэр цэвэрлэх үү?

7. Та хоол идэх үү?

8. Та өнөө орой кино үзэхгүй юу?

9. Дулмаа Баатарын авгай, Баатар Дулмаагийн нөхөр.

10. Тэр ном уншихгүй.

Chapter Three

TEXT

My father and mother are living in their city apartment. Today I went there. I said "How are you?" to my parents. My father was sitting in his room. I also sat there and read a newspaper. My mother was cooking in the kitchen. My mother was making buuz. I cannot make buuz. My elder brother, elder sister and younger sister came, too. My father said "Hello! What's new?" to them. My mother brought in the dinner. We sat at the table, had our dinner, drank tea and talked a lot.

DRILLS

i)

a) Тэр ахад ном өгөв.

b) Багш оюутанд ажил өгөв.

c) Дорж надад ширээ өгөв.

d) Малчин ахад хонь өгөв.

ii)

- a) Оюутанд дэвтэр байна.
- b) Багшид ном байна
- c) Малчинд мал байна
- d) Танд ажил байна

iii)

- a) Оюутан сургуульд сурч байна.
- b) Мал талд байна.
- c) Би гэртээ хоол сурч байна.
- d) Ээж гал тогоонд сууж байна.
- e) Цай аяганд байна.
- f) Сонинд сонин юм байна.

iv)

- a) Миний аав Англид явна.
- b) Дорж, Дулмаа хоёр гэрт орно.
- c) Би кинонд явна.
- d) Багш ангид орно.

v)

a) үзэв

Today I will see a film.

Today I saw a film.

b) идэв

Baatar will have his meal.

Baatar had his meal.

c) хийв

My younger brother/sister does housework.

My younger brother/sister did housework.

d) харив

Dulmaa will go home.

Dulmaa went home.

vi)

a) байв

The dog is eating meat.

The dog was eating meat.

b) байв

Mother is making dinner.

Mother was making dinner.

c) байв

Dorj is having his meal and drinking his tea.
Dorj was having his meal and drinking his tea.

d) байв

My father is reading his newspaper.
My father was reading his newspaper.

vii)

- a) Би аяга авч, цай уув.
- b) Бид кино үзэж, цай уув.
- c) Ээж хоол хийж, юм ярина.
- d) Баатар тамхи татаж, хоолоо хийнэ.
- e) Оюутан монгол хэл сурч, ном уншив.
- f) Дүү бид хоёр гэртээ харьж, их юм ярив.

viii)

- a) Баатар морио унаж, үхэр хариулав.
Баатар морь унаж, үхрээ хариулав.
Baatar rode his horse and herded cattle.
Baatar rode a horse and herded his cattle.
- b) Хүү номоо авч, сургуульд явав.
Хүү ном авч, сургуульдаа явав.
The son took his book and went to school.
The son took a book and went to his school.
- c) Би хоолоо гэрт иднэ.
Би хоол гэртээ иднэ.
I will have my meal in a yurt.
I will have meal at home.
- d) Ээж гал тогооны өрөөндөө хоол хийв.
Ээж гал тогооны өрөөнд хоолоо хийв.
My mother cooked in her kitchen.
My mother cooked her meal in the kitchen.

EXERCISES

b)

1. Will you have a cigarette?
2. I will not smoke.
3. Teacher, what are you doing?
4. I am sitting in my classroom and reading a book.

5. Mother, what is father doing?
6. He is watching a film.
7. My son, will you go to school now?
8. No, today I will not go to school!
9. Whose livestock Baatar is herding?
10. He is herding his brother's livestock.

c)

1. Та тамхи татах уу?
2. Ах аа, аав юу хийж байна вэ?
3. Чиний эгч оюутан уу?
4. Үгүй, оюутан биш, багш.
5. Багш ангидаа сууж, номоо уншнж байна.
6. Чи хэний хүү вэ?
7. Би Баатарын хүү Дорж байна.
8. Миний аав малчин, тэр одоо морио унаж байна.
9. Миний хүү, чи хар өндөө өмсөх үү?
10. Үгүй, би хөх өндөө өмөснө.

Chapter Four

TEXT

Tsend is a herdsman. He herds livestock. Tsend and Dolgor live in a yurt. Tsend leaves home in the morning. Then he rides his horse and goes to his horses. Tsend has his breakfast at home but he has his lunch at the pasture. He comes back home from the pasture in the evening. Then he has his dinner.

Dolgor is young. She is five years younger than Tsend. Tsend is five years older than Dolgor. Dolgor and Tsend eat their meal from wooden bowls. They also drink a little tea. From the begining of summer they sometimes drink airag.

In summer the most herders do not eat much meat, they only drink airag, yogurt and milk. Airag is very tasty and is very good for you.

DRILLS

i)

- a) Миний аав цай уудаг.
- b) Баатар сургуульд явдаггүй.
- c) Сайн оюутан сайн сурдаг.
- d) Малчид морь унадаг.

ii)

a) үздэг

Tsermaa will see a film in the evening.

Tsermaa sees films in the evening.

b) орчуулдаг

My teacher will translate a book.

My teacher translates books.

c) уудаг

I will drink a little tea.

I drink a little tea.

d) хийдэг

My mother will make buuz.

My mother makes buuz.

iii)

a) сургуулиас

b) дэлгүүрээс

c) гэрээс

d) өрөөнөөс

e) надаас

f) тэрнээс

g) сангаас

h) хэлнээс

iv)

a) Айраг цайнаас сайхан.

Цай айрагнаас сайхан.

b) Зун өвлөөс сайхан.

Өвөл зунаас сайхан.

c) Мөнгө модноос сайн.

Мод мөнгөнөөс сайн.

d) Мах гурилаас амттай.

Гурил махнаас амттай.

v)

a) Битгий яв!

b) Өрөөгөө бүү цэвэрлэ!

c) Цайгаа битгий уу!

d) Тамхи бүү тат!

EXERCISES

b)

1. I get up very early.

2. Do you smoke?

3. I do. But I haven't got any now.

4. I have some. Have one of mine.
5. What kind of work do you do?
6. I am a teacher. What kind of work do you do?
7. I do not work, I am a student. I study Mongolian.
8. Do you [Really]? I am a teacher of Mongolian language.
9. What do you do in summer?
10. In summer I rest.

c)

1. Би өглөө эрт босдоггүй.
2. Та ямар ажил хийдэг вэ?
3. Би монгол хэлний багш.
4. Би гэрээсээ их эрт гардаг.
5. Өнөөдөр би босохгүй.
6. Цэнд надаас ах. Тэр миний ах.
7. Цэрмаа надаас дүү. Тэр миний дүү.
8. Тэр гэргээ их ажил хийдэг.
9. Тэр сургуулиасаа эрт ирдэггүй.
10. Би хөгшин. Би их амардаг.

Chapter Five

TEXT

- Son, what time will you go to school today?
-At eight. Mother, yesterday Baatar and I went to the mountains together.
-Did you? How is Baatar?
-Baatar is well but he said his brother got ill.
-Poor thing. What did he say happened?
-He said he caught a cold.
-What mountain two of you climbed? What did you see in the mountains?
-Bogd Uul. Then we saw foxes and deer.
-Really? Were you scared?
-No, I'm not afraid of fox or deer.
-What a good boy you are! Well, go to school now, son!
-OK, bye-bye, mother!
-Bye-bye, son!

DRILLS

i)

- a) авсан
- b) саасан
- c) үзсэн

d) уусан

d) гарсан

ii)

a) байсан

The teacher is writing on the board.

The teacher was writing on the board.

b) байсан

I am not reading a book.

I was not reading a book.

c) байсан

My head is hurting.

My head was hurting.

d) байсан

Where are you coming from?

Where were you coming from?

iii)

a) авсан

b) хийсэн

c) үзсэн

d) байсан

iv)

a) Долгортой

b) надтай

c) хүнтэй

d) багштай

v)

a) Баатар авгайтай.

b) Уул цастай байна.

c) Тэр нохойтой.

d) Баяр ах дүү олонтой/олон ах дүүтэй.

vi)

a) өөхгүй

b) найзгүй

c) самбаргүй

d) малгайгүй

e) бугагүй

f) ханиадгүй

g) мөнгөгүй

h) завгүй

vii)

нэг, хоёр, гурав, дөрөв, тав, зургаа, долоо, найм, ес, арав.

viii)

a) арван

b) найман

c) нэг

d) таван

ix)

гурван цаг

долоон цаг

арван цаг

нэг цаг

EXERCISES

b)

1. Та ах дүүтэй юу?
2. Би ах, дүүгүй.
3. Танай аав ямар ажил хийдэг вэ?
4. Аав багш, сургуульд ажилладаг.
5. Манай аав өвчтэй.
6. Хөөрхий, яасан бэ?
7. Ханиад хүрсэн. Өвөл их хүйтэн байна.
8. Ах бид хоёр ууланд гарсан.
9. Та хоёр юу юу үзсэн бэ?
10. Бид хоёр үнэг, буга үзсэн.

c)

1. Do you have many brothers and sisters?
2. I have an elder brother, an elder sister and two younger brothers/ sisters.
3. What does your brother do?
4. My brother is a herdsman and he herds state livestock.
5. The winter is very cold. I always have the flu.
6. Have you got money?
7. I haven't.
8. What will you do today?
9. I will go to the mountains with my friend.
10. Can I go with you?

Chapter Six

TEXT

(Tsetsegmaa has phoned from her office. Dorj and Tsetsegmaa are speaking on the phone.)

D: Hello?

Ts: Hello, who's there?

D: Dorj.

Ts: Hi, it's Tsetsegmaa. What's new?

D: Hi! Nothing, what's new with you? Are you in your office?

Ts: Yes. Oh, is the book I left at your place still there?

D: The one you put in the cupboard?

Ts: No, the one I put on the table.

D: Yes, it is. Do you need it?

Ts: I need it now. Could you bring it to me?

D: OK, I'll bring it to you when I go to work soon.

Ts: Well, I'll be in my room when you come. What time will you come?

D: I'll come at half past ten.

Ts: OK, is there anything else?

D: Nothing else, bye.

Ts: Bye-bye.

DRILLS

i)

a) үзгээр

b) харандаагаар

c) хоолоор

d) хоолоор

e) дэлгүүрээр

f) модоор

g) англиар, монголоор

h) автобусаар

iii)

a) яваагүй

b) аваагүй

c) үзээгүй

d) очоогүй

e) цэвэрлээгүй

f) хийгээгүй

g) яваагүй

h) ирээгүй

iv)

a) Би морь унаж байгаа.

Би морь унадаг.

I am riding a horse.

I am ride horse.

- | | |
|---|--|
| b) Би даалгавраа хийж байгаа. | I am doing my homework. |
| Би даалгавраа хийдэг. | I do my homework. |
| c) Би гэрээ цэвэрдэж байгаа. | I am cleaning my home. |
| Би гэрээ цэвэрлэдэг. | I clean my home. |
| d) Баатар Англид очиж байгаа. | Baatar is going to England. |
| Баатар Англид очдог. | Baatar goes to England. |
| e) Нохой өөхтэй мах идэж байгаа. | The dog is eating fatty meat. |
| Нохой өөхтэй мах иддэг. | Dog eats fatty meat. |
| f) Цэрмаа сургуульдаа автобусаар. явж байгаа. | Tsermaa is going to her school by bus. |
| Цэрмаа сургуульдаа автобусаар явдаг. | Tsermaa goes to her school by bus. |
| g) Чи аав, ээжтэйгээ сууж байгаа юу? | Are you living with your parents |
| Чи аав, ээжтэйгээ суудаг уу? | Do you live with your parents? |
| h) Би аав, ээжтэйгээ сууж байгаа. | I am living with my parents. |
| Би аав, ээжтэйгээ суудаг. | I live with my parents. |

v)

- a) монгол дээр
- b) шүүгээн дотор
- c) яаман дээр
- d) цүнхэн дотор
- e) цүнхэн дотор
- f) самбар дээр
- g) хэн дээр
- h) найз дээрээ

vi)

- a) Би номын дэлгүүрт очихдоо нэг ном авсан.
- b) Энд ирэхдээ чи мөнгө авчирч өгөх үү?
- c) Дорж дэлгүүрээр явахдаа Дулмаатай хамт байсан уу?
- d) Доржийг дэлгүүрээр явахад Дулмаа хамт байсан уу?
- e) Чи гэртээ харихдаа хэнтэй хамт явах вэ?
- f) Баатарыг өвдөхөд ээж нь их санаа зовсон.
- g) Цэндийг гэрээ цэвэрлэхэд Долгор амарсан.
- h) Нохой ирэхэд хүүхэд айсан.

vii)

- a) Би номыг чинь уншсан.
- b) Баатар морио унаж: байна.
- c) Би өнөөдөр ээжтэй чинь уулзсан.

- d) Долгор ээжтэйгээ ярьж, ээжийнхээ буузыг идсэн.
- e) Сайн оюутан багшаасаа айдаггүй.
- f) Би гэрээсээ ажилдаа автобусаар явдаг.
- g) Гэрээс чинь захиа ирсэн үү?
- h) Багш оюутнаасаа даалгаврыг нь авсан.

viii)

- a) twelve o'clock
- b) twenty to nine
- c) twenty five to seven
- d) quarter past ten
- e) half past four
- f) half past four
- g) twenty past six
- h) five to ten

ix)

- a) арав тавин тав/арван нэгд тав дутуу
- b) гурав арван тав
- c) долоо дөч/наймд хорь дутуу
- d) зургаа арав
- e) арван нэг хорин тав
- f) тав гучин тав/зургаад хорин тав дутуу
- g) дөрөв дөчин тав/тавд арван тав дутуу
- h) найм тав

x)

тав гучин тав/зургаад хорин тав дутуу; дөрөв дөч/тавд хорь дутуу; арав арван тав; арван хоёр хорь

EXERCISES

b)

1. Өнөөдөр чи хэдэн цагт боссон бэ?
2. Наймд арван тав дутуу байхад боссон.
3. Найм аравт өглөөний цайгаа уусан.
4. Миний авгай банкинд ажилладаг.
5. Өнөөдөр би ажил дээр нь хоёр аравт очон.
6. Оюутнууд багшаасаа их айдаг.
7. Баатар морио их сайн унадаг.
8. Өнөөдөр би ажилдаа автобусаар ирсэн.
9. Наймаг дэлгүүрээр явж байхад найз минь манайд ирсэн.
10. Би гэртээ харихдаа тэр номыг аваад явсан.

c)

1. My son writes in pencil. He can not write in pen.

2. Do you have my money?
3. No, it is in your bag.
4. I went to my friend's house with him.
5. I met his parents.
6. Did you write a letter to your mother?
7. I didn't. My mother is very worried now.
8. A letter came from my elder brother.
9. I received a letter from my family.
10. What is the news in town?

Chapter Seven

TEXT

BILL MEETS HIS FRIEND ON THE BUS

Bill studies Mongolian language and history and lives in Mongolia. Today he will send a letter and a parcel to his parents. Bill wrote his letter and put it in an envelope. Then he put his gift in a box, took everything and left his hostel. When he went out he said "Hello!" to the doorman. He did not see anybody else.

There is a special post office with customs in Ulaanbaatar. That post office is near the railway station. Bill got on a bus from the bus stop in front of the University. On the bus he met a friend called Ganbold. They said to each other, "Hello! What's new?"

G: Where are you going to?

B: I am going to the post office to send a parcel to my parents.

G: What will you send to your parents?

B: I'm just sending two books.

G: What books?

B: "Mongolian Paintings" and "Mongolian Ornamental and Decorative Art".

G: Oh, they are very beautiful books. "Mongolian Ornamental and Decorative Art" was written by Mr. Chültem. What else will you send?

B: Nothing else. Oh, yes, a letter.

- G: I think your parents will be delighted.
B: Where are you going to yourself?
G: I am going to the library. I must read some books there.
B: OK, I shall go there after I go to the post office.
G: Well, I'll get off here. Shall we meet in the library again?
B: Perhaps so. See you later.
G: See you later.

DRILLS

i)

a) My mother cooks.

Манайхан ээжээрээ хоол хийлгэдэг.
We make mother cook.

b) My son went back home from his school.

Багш нь манай хүүг сургуулиас гэрт нь буцаасан.
The teacher sent my son back home from school.

c) The boss got angry with you.

Чи даргаа уурлуулсан.
You made the boss angry.

d) I took medicine.

Эмч надад эм уулгасан.
A doctor made me take medicine.

e) My boss knew it.

Би даргадаа мэдэгдлээ.
I let my boss know.

f) Bill studies Mongolian.

Багш Бнлд Монгол хэл сургаж байна.
Bill is taught Mongolian by the teacher.

g) Children get up early.

Аав нь хүүхдүүдээ эрт босгодог.
The father gets his children up early.

e) My girlfriend went home.

Би охин найзаа гэрт нь хүргэсэн.
I took my girlfriend home.

ii)

a) найзаараа

b) аав, ээжээ

c) аав, ээждээ

d) чамайг

e) зурагчнаар

f) улсыг

g) хүнийг

h) санааг

iii)

- a) Надад нэг ч мөнгө байхгүй.
- b) Хэн ч ирээгүй.
- c) Энэ ном хаана ч байхгүй.
- d) Надад энэ хоёр номын аль нь ч байхгүй.
- e) Тэр хүн найз нараа хэзээ ч мартдаггүй.
- f) Та нар ямар ч ном авч болохгүй.
- g) Та нар хэдийд ч ирж болохгүй.
- h) Та нар хаашаа ч явж болохгүй.

iv)

- a) Би энэ номыг л уншиж байна.
Энэ номыг би л уншиж байна.
- b) Би энэ хичээлийг л сурсан.
Энэ хичээлийг би л сурсан.
- c) Би тэр хүнийг л таньдаг.
Тэр хүнийг би л таньдаг.
- d) Би мах л иддэг.
Би л мах иддэг.
- e) Дорж кино л үзнэ.
Дорж л кино үзнэ.
- f) Би Монголд л очно.
Би л Монголд очно
- g) Тэр гэртээ л харина.
Тэр л гэртээ харина.
- h) Долгор найзаа л хүлээж байна.
Долгор л найзаа хүлээж байна.

EXERCISES

b)

- 1. Өчигдөр би ээждээ захиа явуулсан.
- 2. Өнөөдөр би багшаа их уурлуулсан. Багш намайг ангиас гаргасан.
- 3. Манай сургуулийг олон жилийн өмнө байгуулсан.
- 4. Би энэ номыг энд байлгана. Дараа нь авна.
- 5. Жолооч автобусаа буудал дээр зогсоов.
- 6. Надад дөрвөн л хонь бий, харин олон үхэр бий.
- 7. Бидний дундаас Баатар л морь сайн унадаг.
- 8. Өнөөдөр би нэг ч хичээлгүй.
- 9. Өнөө орой би кино үзнэ. Чи үзэх үү?
- 10. Монгол сайхан улс. Англи ч бас.

c)

1. Students threw the teacher out of class.
2. I gave meat to my dog to eat.
3. Dorj has neither money nor food.
4. In this area they have no cinema, no theatre or anything at all.
5. In that area they have cinema, theatre or everything.
6. Some people have got nothing.
7. To today's class only the teacher came.
8. Only the driver stops the bus.
9. You did not write yourself. Whom did you get to write?
10. I sent a parcel to my parents by post.

Chapter Eight

TEXT

IN THE LIBRARY

Bill went to the post office and sent his things then went to the library by bus. He saw Ganbold again there. Bill said to Ganbold, "Hello" and asked him, "What are you reading?"

G: A book about the Mongolian revolution. What books are you going to read?

B: I have to read a book in Russian. Hey, Ganbaa, will you come to my place this evening?

G: I'll come. What time?

B: Come at seven. Bring a bottle of arkhi, please. I'll cook.

G: OK, I'll bring a bottle. Will be there anybody else?

B: There will be others. I've just invited the French girl student. Is Baatar in town now?

G: He is. Why ?

B: I have to invite him as well. But I haven't got his telephone number.

G: I have it. I'll tell you.

B: OK, I'll write it down.

G: Have you got paper and pencil?

B: Yes, I have.

G: Two seven three four one. Did you get it ?

B: Yes, I did.

G: Did you send your things?

B: I've just come here after sending them.

G: Did you say you were going to read a Russian book? But you do not speak Russian, do you?

- B: I do not speak Russian, but my teacher does. I'll have my teacher read it for me. Oh, here comes my teacher. Right, I'll call Baatar when I get home. See you this evening.
G: Bye, see you later.

DRILLS

i)

- a) Маргааш ууланд гаръя!
- b) Кино үзье!
- c) Сургуульдаа явъя!
- d) Өнөө орой Доржийнд очъё!
- e) Ном уншъя.
- f) Баатартай уулзъя.
- g) Одоо ажилдаа очъё.
- h) Одоо гэргээ харъя.

ii)

- a) Baatar has just arrived. (past)
- b) Baatar is on his way. (fut.)
- c) They two drunk airag. (past)
- d) The king has just left his palace. (past)
- e) Well, I'm off. (fut.)
- f) Dorj just went into his room. (past)
- g) But he left now. (past)
- h) The teacher came in the room and sat down straight away. (past)

iii)

- a) Дорж багшийнд
- b) малгайтайд нь
- c) малгайтайгаас нь
- d) манайхаас
- e) тэднийд
- f) тэднийд. Долгорынд

iv)

- a) Би өнөөдөр сургуульдаа очсон. Тэгээд хичээл хийсэн.
Би өнөөдөр сургуульдаа очоод хичээл хийсэн.
- b) Сайхан амарсан. Тэгээд ажилдаа орсон.
Сайхан амраад ажилдаа орсон.
- c) Бид ууланд гарсан. Тэгээд гэртээ харьсан.
Бид ууланд гараад гэртээ харьсан.
- d) Дүү даалгавраа хийсэн. Тэгээд найз дээрээ очсон.
Дүү даалгавраа хийгээд найз дээрээ очсон.
- e) Маргааш би эрт босно. Тэгээд цайгаа ууна. Тэгээд ажилдаа явна.

- Маргааш би эрт босоод цайгаа уугаад ажилдаа явна.
- f) Бил энд нэг сар сууна. Тэгээд Англидаа буцна.
Бил энд нэг сар суугаад Англидаа буцна.
- g) Миний хүү, би чиний багштай уулзсан. Тэгээд санаа зовсон.
Миний хүү, би чиний багштай уулзаад санаа зовсон.
- h) Чамаас захиа авсан. Тэгээд их баярласан.
Чамаас захиа аваад их баярласан.
- v)
- a) боловч/харин
b) боловч/харин
c) бичивч/бичдэг боловч
d) боловч/харин
e) боловч/харин
f) боловч/харин
g) боловч/харин
h) боловч/харин

EXERCISES

- b)
1. -Та Монголд очиж үзсэн үү?
 2. -Үзсэн. Энэ зун очсон.
 3. -Та айраг ууж үзсэн үү?
 4. -Үзсэн. Их амттай байсан.
 5. -Та хаана хаана очсон бэ?
 6. -Улаанбаатарт гурав хоноод Цэцэрлэгт очсон.
 7. -Тэгээд юу хийсэн бэ?
 8. -Би Цэцэрлэгт дөрөв хоноод Улаанбаатарт буцаж очсон.
 9. -Улаанбаатарт найзуудтай юу?
 10. -Тийм. Би тэднийд очсон.
- c)
1. -Bill, have you ever tried buuz?
 2. -No, I haven't. I'll try some now.
 3. -Shall we go to the cinema this evening?
 4. -Yes, let's go after the dinner.
 5. -Here you are. Have some buuz.
 6. -Thank you. What tasty buuz they are!
 7. -OK, let's go!
 8. -Mother, we are off now.
 9. -All right, see you. Bill, come again.
 10. OK, I will. See you!

Chapter Nine

TEXT

AT THE STUDENTS' HOSTEL

(The phone rings at Baatar's home)

Ba: Hello?

Bi: Hello. Is that Baatar?

Ba: Yes, it is Baatar. Who is that?

Bi: It's Bill. How are you?

Ba: Fine, how are you? What's new?

Bi: Fine, nothing new. Baatar, are you free this evening?

Ba: Yes. Why?

Bi: I wanted to invite you. Could you come?

Ba: Yes, I can. What time should I come there?

Bi: Come right now. You've never been to my place before, so I'll tell you the way. Get on the bus which goes to the University and get off at the last stop. Then...do you know where the old circus is?

Ba: Yes, I do.

Bi: Then go to the circus. It is easy to find my place from there. Did you understand?

Ba: Yes, I did. I am coming now.

In half an hour Baatar arrived the University hostel for foreign students. Showing his ID card to the doorman he said, "I came to see Bill," and went upstairs. Then he entered Bill's room and after saying hello to Bill he suddenly saw the other guests and said, "Oh, Ganbold and Ann are here. How are you?" and sat down on the bed. Bill brought in fried beef and potato soup, served everybody and said, "Bon appetit!". When Bill asked "Do you want some tea?" everybody said "Yes, please". After having the meal Bill opened a bottle of arkhi and gave some to every one. Then he said, "To your good health", and all of them clinked their glasses and drank up.

DRILLS

i)

a) над руу

b) Ганболд руу

c) Богд уул руу

d) Москва руу

e) гэр лүүгээ

f) манайх руу

g) Их сургууль руу

h) Их дэлгүүр лүү

ii)

- a) Аав нь хүүгээсээ өнөөдөр сургуульдаа явах, үгүйг нь асуув.
- b) Хүү нь өөрийгөө сургуульдаа явна гэсэн.
- c) Баатар өөрийгөө явлаа гэв.
- d) Цэнд Долгорыг өвчтэй байна гэсэн.

iii)

- a) Таныг хэн гэдэг вэ?/ Таны нэрийг хэн гэдэг вэ?
- b) Намайг Баатар гэдэг.
- c) Таны нэрийг/алдрыг хэн гэдэг вэ?
- d) Миний нэрийг Нямдорж гэдэг.

iv)

- a) явах гэж байна.
явах гэсэн.
- b) очих гэж байна.
очих гэсэн.
- c) унших гэж байна.
унших гэсэн.
- d) уулзах гэж байна.
уулзах гэсэн.
- e) амрах гэж байна.
амрах гэсэн.
- f) явах гэж байна.
явах гэсэн.
- g) хийх гэж байна вэ?
хийх гэсэн бэ?
- h) утасдах гэж байна.
утасдах гэсэн.

v)

- a) уулзах гээд
уулзахаар
- b) очих гээд
очихоор
- c) авах гээд
авахаар
- d) унших гээд
уншихаар
- e) явах гээд
явахаар
- f) болох гээд
болохоор

- g) очих гээд
очихоор
- h) уух гээд
уухаар
- vi)
- a) Мөнгө байхгүй гэж бодсон учраас ширээ аваагүй.
Мөнгө байхгүй гэж бодсон болохоор ширээ аваагүй.
Яагаад ширээ аваагүй вэ гэвэл, мөнгө байхгүй гэж бодсон.
- b) Багш ирээгүй учраас оюутнууд явсан.
Багш ирээгүй болохоор оюутнууд явсан.
Багш ирэхгүй гээд оюутнууд явсан.
Оюутнууд яагаад явсан бэ гэвэл, багшийг ирэхгүй гэж бодсон.
- c) Өнөөдөр их нартай байгаа учраас малгай өмсөх ёстой.
Өнөөдөр их нартай байгаа болохоор малгай өмсөх ёстой.
Өнөөдөр яагаад малгай өмсөх ёстой вэ гэвэл, их нартай байна.
- d) Өнөөдөр их хүйтэн байгаа учраас пальто өмсөх ёстой.
Өнөөдөр их хүйтэн байгаа болохоор пальто өмсөх ёстой.
Өнөөдөр яагаад пальто өмсөх ёстой вэ гэвэл, их хүйтэн байна.
- e) Маргааш эрт босох учраас одоо унтлаа.
Маргааш эрт босох болохоор одоо унтлаа.
Маргааш эрт босох гээд одоо унтлаа.
Яагаад одоо унтах гэж байна вэ гэвэл, маргааш эрт босно.
- f) Өнөөдөр ажил ихтэй байсан учраас одоо амрах гэж байна.
Өнөөдөр ажил ихтэй байсан болохоор одоо амрах гэж байна.
Яагаад одоо амрах гэж байна вэ гэвэл, өнөөдөр ажил ихтэй байсан.
- g) Тэр үргэлж энд ирээд байсан учраас би түүнд "Битгий ир" гэсэн.
Тэр үргэлж энд ирээд байсан болохоор би түүнд "Битгий ир" гэсэн.
Би түүнд яагаад "Битгий ир" гэсэн бэ гэвэл, тэр үргэлж энд ирээд байсан.
- h) Тэр даалгавраа хийгээгүй учраас багшийн асуултыг хариулж чадаагүй
Тэр даалгавраа хийгээгүй болохоор багшийн асуултыг хариулж чадаагүй.
Тэр яагаад багшийн асуултыг хариулж чадаагүй вэ гэвэл, даалгавраа хийгээгүй байсан.
- vii)
- a) -Баатар явж уу?
- b) -Явжээ.
- c) Танай ээж чамайг байхгүй гэжээ.
- d) Хөөе, миний мөнгө байхгүй болчихжээ.

EXERCISES

b)

1. -Та хуушуур идэж үзсэн үү?
2. -Үзсэн. Их амттай байсан.
3. -Та яагаад хуушуур идэж үзсэн бэ?
4. -Ямар байна гэж үзэх гээд.
5. Өнөөдөр хүйтэн байгаа болохоор би пальто өмөснө.
6. Ээж өвчтэй учраас би хоол хийх ёстой.
7. Баатар өөрийгөө ирэхгүй гэсэн болохоор бид нар хүлээхгүй.
8. Долгор Цэндийг өвчтэй болохоор ирэхгүй гэсэн.
9. -Та яагаад энэ том малгайг өмөсч байна вэ?
10. -Өнөөдөр их нартай болохоор.

c)

1. The son said that he wouldn't read the book because his teacher didn't say so.
2. Ganbold said he was ill so he wouldn't drink arkhi.
3. It is winter so I should wear warm clothes.
4. -Why did you eat my meal?
5. -I wanted to see what it was like.
6. -Where will this bus go to?
7. -To the superstore. It is leaving now, will you get on?
8. -My son, has your friend come?
9. -He has!
10. I am making tea. Do you want some?

Chapter Ten

TEXT

Bill knows a girl called Jargalsaihan. This evening he will visit her at home. He thought, "It might get cold when I come back in the evening. So I must put my overcoat on and wear my scarf", and he put his overcoat on and put on his scarf. Then he left his flat and arrived at the family he knows.

The name of Jargalsaihan's mother is Tsetsmaa. When Bill came to her house he greeted her, saying "Good evening, how are you, Mrs. Tsetsmaa?"

"Fine, how are you?"

"Fine".

"Are your studies going well?"

"Yes. How is your work?"

"Good. You are lucky. I've just finished cooking some huushuur. You like huushuur, don't you?"

"Of course I do"

"All right, then take your overcoat off and go through" Bill took his coat off and went into the room. Then he said:

"Hello, Jargal? You look very busy"

"Hello, I am preparing for tomorrow's lesson. Otherwise the teacher might ask me something. It won't do if I don't know what he taught".

On the table, beside Jargalsaihan's book, there were a painting and a photo. Looking at the photo Bill said:

"Is it your sister's photo?"

"Yes, that's right. How did you know?"

"I thought so because she looks very similar to you. Who painted the picture next to it?"

"My sister did. It's got everything: the life of a Mongolian herdsman, the vast and beautiful steppe and the five kinds of animals."

"I think so. What are the Five kinds of animals?"

"Sheep, goats, cattle, horses and camels".

The door of Jargalsaihan's room opened and her mother brought in full plate of huushuur and full kettle of milk tea.

"Well, kids, have your meal and drink your tea! I expect you are hungry".

DRILLS

i)

- a) Намайг очвол чи хүлээж байх уу?
- b) Сонин кино байвал үзэх үү?
- c) Багшийг байхгүй байвал гэртээ харья.
- d) Тэрийг ирвэл би явлаа.
- e) Машин авбал мөнгө байхгүй болно.
- f) Одоо хичээлээ хийвэл маргааш ууланд гарья
- g) Ханиад хүрвэл эмчид очно.

ii)

- a) Дорж бол Цэцэгмааг хүлээж байна.
- b) Улаанбаатар бол сайхан хот юм.
- c) Би бол маргааш кино үзэхгүй.
- d) Тэр оюутан бод хичээлд сайн бэлтгэжээ.
- e) Манай ах болбол олон малгтай
- f) Баагар болбол морь сайн унадаг.
- g) Дорж бод хоол сайн хийж чаддаггүй.

iii)

- a) ингэсэн
- b) хийсэн
- c) яаж
- d) тэгье
- e) яагаад тэгж
- f) ингье
- g) хийж

iv)

- a) халуун байж магадгүй/халуун байх аа

- b) хүйтэн байж магадгүй/хүйтэн байх аа
- c) өмөсч магадгүй/өмсөх байх аа
- d) зүүж магадгүй/зүүх байх аа
- e) бэлтгэсэн байж магадгүй/бэлтгэсэн байх аа
- f) бүтэж магадгүй/бүтэх байх аа
- g) ирсэн байж магадгүй/ирсэн байх аа
- h) болж магадгүй/болно байх аа

v)

- a) оролгүй яах вэ
- b) гарахгүй байлгүй яах вэ
- c) хэцүү биш байлгүй яах вэ
- d) дуртай байлгүй яах вэ
- e) уурлалгүй яах вэ
- f) гарсан байлгүй яах вэ
- g) үзэлгүй яах вэ
- h) бэлтгээгүй байлгүй яах вэ

EXERCISES

b)

1. -Өнөөдөр сургуульдаа явсан уу?
2. -Тэгэлгүй яах вэ.
3. Би талх авахаа мартчихжээ. За, яах вэ.
4. Надад мөнгө байхгүй. Яана!
5. Өнөөдөр бороо орж магадгүй.
6. Би ажлаа хийчихсэн.
7. Миний хүү, чи сайн байвал чамд таваг дүүрэн бууз өгнө.
8. Битгий, аав чинь уурлана шүү.
9. Бороо орвол гарахгүй байя.
10. Ингэвэл амархан болно.

c)

1. If you study well, it will be easier to find a job.
2. I forgot to buy some food. Never mind, let's go to a cafe.
3. I've got no money! What shall I do?
4. Let's call Dorj. Shall we go there if he is in?
5. Let's go to a countryside if it won't rain. Shall we?
6. I am not an Englishman. I am a Scottish.
7. -You are free tonight, aren't you?
8. -Of course I am. Why?
9. -Are you in this picture?
10. -Of course, that's me.

Chapter Eleven

TEXT

Once upon a time there was an old woman with one son. They had a single piebald cow. Every year the cow gave birth to a calf, and when it became two years old they killed and ate it.

But once a piebald calf was born. When the calf became two years old the son said to his mother:

-Mother, let's kill and eat the calf.

-My son, we can't eat it. I'll use it as a dowry to get a wife for you, answered his mother.

Then there was another old woman who had one daughter. The mother gave the piebald two-year-old calf as a dowry to her and took her daughter for her son as a wife. Not long after the boy and girl set up home they were left on their own because their mothers died.

One day the young man went out, killed their only cow and gave away its liver and the fat around the gut to a crow.

-Oh, why did you give away liver and fat of the cow? It would have been nicer for poor people like us to have eaten them for a couple of nights, his wife scolded him...

DRILLS

i)

- a) хичээл дуустал
- b) Дорж багшийг иртэл
- c) намайг ортол
- d) намайг уншиж дуустал
- e) тэрийг утасдтал
- f) хоол идтэлээ
- g) банкинд очтолоо

ii)

- a) Надад чи хэрэгтэй.
- b) Надад архи хэрэгтэй.
- c) Миний хүү сурах хэрэггүй.
- d) Би өрөөгөө цэвэрлэх хэрэггүй.

iii)

- a) очих дуртай
- b) бодох дуртай
- c) ярих дургүй
- d) Би тамхцнь дургүй.

iv)

- a) Өнөөдөр арван хүнтэй арвууланттай нь уулзсан.
- b) Тэр долоон буузыг долууланг нь идсэн.
- c) Аав, ээж, эгч бид дөрөв дөрвүүлээ кино үзсэн.
- d) Манай найман оюутан наймуулаа хичээлд орсон.
- e) Арван хичээлийг арвууланг нь үзээд дууслаа.
- f) Хоёр найз над дээр хоёулаа ирсэн.
- g) Ээж зургаан үнээг зургууланг саасан.
- h) Аав арван морио арвууланг нь унаж үзсэн.

v)

- a) аравдугаар
- b) дөрөвдэх
- c) анх
- d) хорин нэгдүгээр он бол мянга есөн зуун гучин нэгэн

vi)

- a) мянга есөн зуун дөчин тав
- b) мянга есөн зуун жаран найм
- c) мянга долоон зуун дөчин тав
- d) мянга гурван зуун жаран гурав
- e) мянга жаран зургаа
- f) мянга дөрвөн зуун ерэн хоёр
- g) мянга есөн зуун ерэн зургаа
- h) мянга нэг зуун далан долоо

vii)

- a) мянга есөн зуун дөчин оны зургаан сар
- b) мянга есөн зуун далан таван оны дөрвөн сар
- c) мянга есөн зуун ерэн оны найман сар
- d) мянга есөн зуун арван нэгэн оны есөн сар
- e) мянга есөн зуун арван долоон оны арван сар
- f) мянга долоон зуун наян таван оны нэг сар
- g) мянга долоон зуун наян есөн оны зургаан сар

viii)

- a) арван хоёр оны найман сарын арван гурван
- b) ерэн оны найман сарын есөн
- c) наян долоон оны арван сарын арван таван
- d) арван хоёр оны гурван сарын дөрвөн
- e) дөчин гурван оны хоёр сарын арван
- f) арван долоон оны арван сарын арван долоон
- g) ерэн зургаан оны найман сарын хорин есөн
- h) мянга хоёр зуун зургаан оны найман сарын таван

EXERCISES

b)

1. -Чиний төрсөн өдөр хэзээ вэ?
2. -Миний төрсөн өдөр бол гурван сарын арван таван.
3. -Чи хэдэн онд төрсөн бэ?
4. -Мянга есөн зуун тавин зургаан онд төрсөн.
5. -Танайх хэдүүлээ вэ?
6. -Манайх тавуулаа.
7. -Өнөөдөр би анх удаа монгол кино үзсэн.
8. -Дуртай байсан уу?
9. -Тэгсэн. Сайн кино байсан.
10. Би тантай дараагийн сарын таванд уулзах хэрэгтэй.

c)

1. -When is your birthday?
2. -My birthday was last week.
3. -on the seventeenth of October.
4. -What day was it?
5. -Friday.
6. -Did you get many presents? What did you get?
7. -It is the third time my mother gave me socks.
8. I don't need socks at all.
9. -How many are there in your family?
10. There are ten of us.

Chapter Twelve

TEXT

When the meat from their cow was finished, after they had lived on it for several days, the young man went to kill marmots and ground squirrels.

One day he was walking on the mountains, hungry and thirsty. Looking for ground squirrels like this he saw a bird's nest in a tree and thought, "I'll take some eggs, and fry and eat them". But a crow flew down and said in human speech:

-Hey, boy, how are you? Some time ago when I was very hungry you helped me. So I thought I would help you twice. Now, watch me. Dig down at the bottom of the tree which I shall land on. A small pot will be there. When you say "Be food and drink made!" to the pot it will be done. Take it and go. If you are tired again come to me once more. Then the crow flew away and landed on the branch of a large tree.

The young man came to the tree and started to dig until a small pot was revealed. When he said "Be meal and drink made in this pot!" a steaming hot meal was made...

DRILLS

i)

- a) Тэр надад харагдахгүй байсан.
- b) Би цагдаад баригдсан.
- c) Манай нэг морь чононд идүүлсэн.
- d) Тэд бидэнд ялагдсан.
- e) Бид тэд нарт ялагдсан.
- f) Гахай анчинд алагдсан.
- g) Би багшид харагдаагүй.
- h) Багш оюутнуудад сонсогдохгүй байна.

ii)

- a) Өчигдөр миний уулзсан хүн анчин байсан.
- b) Надтай хамт явсан охин миний найз биш, эгч.
- c) Саяын орж ирсэн гоё охинтой уулзъя гэж би бодож байна.
- d) Чиний нэгдэх өдөр хийсэн хоол их муу байсан.
- e) Миний унасан морь их хурдан байсан.
- f) Чиний уншдаг ном их муу байдаг.
- g) Миний авсан номыг "Монгол гоёл чимэглэлийн урлаг" гэдэг.
- h) Миний хийдэг архи гоё байна.

iii)

- a) хийхээс өмнө
- b) ирэхээс өмнө
- c) ажлын/ажлаас өмнө
- d) очихоос өмнө
- e) идэхээсээ өмнө
- f) үзэхээс өмнө
- g) очихоосоо өмнө
- h) ирэхээс өмнө

iv)

- a) ирсний дараа
- b) үдээс хойш
- c) идсэний дараа
- d) хичээлийн дараа
- e) эхлэхээс өмнө
- f) дууссаны дараа
- g) амарсаны дараа
- h) хийсний дараа

v)

- a) явах юмсан
 - явах хэрэгтэй
 - явах хэрэггүй
 - явах дуртай
 - явах дургүй

явах ёстой
явах ёсгүй
явах гэж байна
явах гээгүй байна
явмаар байна
явмааргүй байна
явъя!

b) очих юмсан

очих хэрэгтэй
очих хэрэггүй
очих дуртай
очих дургүй
очих ёстой
очих ёсгүй
очих гэж байна
очих гээгүй байна
очмоор байна
очмооргүй байна
очъё!

c) идэх юмсан

идэх хэрэгтэй
идэх хэрэггүй
идэх дуртай
идэх дургүй
идэх ёстой
идэх ёсгүй
идэх гэж байна
идэх гээгүй байна
идмээр байна
идмээргүй байна
идъё!

d) амрах юмсан

амрах хэрэгтэй
амрах хэрэггүй
амрах дуртай
амрах дургүй
амрах ёстой
амрах ёсгүй
амрах гэж байна
амрах гээгүй байна
амармаар байна
амармааргүй байна
амръя!

vi)

- a) явмаар байна явах юмсан
- b) явмааргүй байна
- c) идмээргүй байна идэхгүй юмсан
- d) тогломоор байна тоглох юмсан

EXERCISES

b)

1. Би архи уумаар байна.
2. Чи архи уух хэрэгтэй юм шиг харагдаж байна.
3. Хоол идэхээсээ өмнө тэр өлөн чоно шиг байсан.
4. Өнөө орой ажил дуусахаас өмнө чи энэ захиаг бичиж дуусах хэрэгтэй.
5. Өнөө орой бороо орох юм шиг байна.
6. Есөн цагаас өмнө бороо орвол бнд нар гарахгүй.
7. Тэрийг үдээс өмнө гарсан гэсэн.
8. Өнөөдөр халуун болох юм шиг байна.
9. Тэр энд ирээд л байна. Чамд дуртай юм шиг байна.
10. Ажлын дараа, гэртээ харихаасаа өмнө жаахан юм уудаг.

c)

1. -Look, a girl who has just come in is very beautiful!
2. -Yes, she is. I wonder if she has a boyfriend.
3. -It seems she hasn't.
4. -Shall I say "Hello" to her?
5. -I saw her before you did. I'll get to know her.
6. -Then do it quickly. Otherwise somebody else will.
7. -OK, I'll do it after I drink this.
8. -No, go before you drink it.
9. -Right, I'm on my way.
10. -Oh, what shall I do? Baatar is talking with her now.

Chapter Thirteen

TEXT

Having eaten the meal the young man took the pot with him, came back home and lived without wanting for anything.

But a servant-girl of the prince visited them. The wife of the young man put their old pot on, poured in some water and was about to make tea in it. At that point the young man said:

-Hey, are you making tea in it for this woman?

He grabbed his magic pot and said, "Be nice milk tea boiled!" and tea was immediately boiled.

Having drunk the tea the woman came back to the prince's and told him:

-That poor man lives better than we do. He has a magic pot to cook meals and make drinks for them.

Hearing that the prince sent a man for the young man, who brought him back with his pot. The prince asked the young man:

-Well, what does your pot do? Show me its magic.

When the young man said "Appear a full pot of milk tea!" to his pot, a potfull of milk tea was made.

At seeing that the prince asked:

-Well, do you want your head cut off or will you give your pot to me?

The young man thought for a while and said:

-Oh, well, never mind. Of course it is better to give away my pot than to die!

He gave his pot away and went back home.

Coming home he said:

-The prince has taken my pot.

-You showed off to that bad servant woman, that's why this thing has happened! his wife said.

Then the young man went to the crow. The crow asked:

-Well, why did you come?

-The prince took the pot, he answered.

The crow gave him a magic hammer and said:

-When you hold this hammer and make a gesture towards any kind of living thing saying "Tab yab!" the animal will die...

DRILLS

i)

- a) танилцсан
- b) хэлэлцсэн
- c) оролцсон
- d) оролцсон
- e) үнсэлцсэн
- f) оролцоогүй
- g) танилцуулсан
- h) харилцдаг

ii)

- a) Энэ ном чинийхээс сайн.
Чиний ном энэ номоос/энэнээс сайн.
- b) Машин морьноос хурдан.
Морь машинаас хурдан.

- c) Баатар Ганболдоос том.
Ганболд Баатараас том.
- d) Ээж эгчээс илүү сайхан хоол хийдэг.
Эгч ээжээс илүү сайхан хоол хийдэг.
- e) Манайх танайхаас хол.
Танайх манайхаас хол.
- f) Доржийнх Батынхаас олон малтай.
Батынх Доржийнхоос олон малтай.
- g) Би энэ оюутнаас сайн зурдаг.
Энэ оюутан надаас сайн зурдаг.
- h) Өчигдрийн хуушуур энэнээс муу байсан.
Энэ хуушуур өчигдрийнхөөс муу байна.

iii)

- a) Ах нь дүүгээсээ хурдан бичдэг.
Дүү нь ахаасаа хурдан бичдэг.
- b) Заримдаа би чамаас илүү амттай хоол хийдэг.
Заримдаа чи надаас илүү амттай хоол хийдэг.
- c) Тэр Батаас олон кино үзсэн.
Бат түүнээс олон кино үзсэн.
- d) Аав надаас илүү олон ном уншдаг.
Би ааваасаа илүү олон ном уншдаг.
- e) Энэ машин автобуснаас удаан явж байна.
Автобус энэ машинаас удаан явж байна.
- f) Галт тэргээр явах нь онгоцоор явахаас удаан.
Онгоцоор явах нь галт тэргээр явахаас хурдан.

iv)

- a) Энд байгаа гурван тогооноос хар нь хамгийн том.
- b) Миний үзсэн олон киноноос өчигдрийнх хамгийн муу нь байсан.
- c) Монгол хүн бүрийн хийдэг буузанаас манай ээжийн хийдэг нь хамгийн амттай.
- d) Доржийн олон адуунаас тэр загал морь нь хамгийн хурдан.
- e) Монголын дөрвөн улирлаас хамгийн сайхан нь намар.
- f) Тэд тавуулаа ширээ хийснээс Баатарынх хамгийн муу нь байна.

v)

- a) Долгорынх
- b) чинийх
- c) чинийх
- d) өвлийнх
- e) өчигдрийнх
- f) Дулмаагийнх

EXERCISES

b)

1. Би зодолдох дургүй.
2. Энэ ном миний уншсан номоос дээр гэж би бодож байна.
3. Ахын морь хамгийн хурдан нь.
4. Дорж хөдөөнийх, харин авгай нь хотынх.
5. Тэднийх тэрний хуучин машинаар явснаас галт тэргээр явсан нь дээр.
6. Тэр түүнийг гэрийнхэнтэйгээ танилцуулсан.
7. Баатар хуралд оролцох дуртай.
8. Манай оюутнууд сурсан хичээлээ дандаа ярилцдаг.
9. Өчигдөр чи гэртээ байсан бол дээр байжээ.
10. Би дэлгүүрт хоёр удаа очсон боловч талх авч чадсангүй.

c)

1. It would have been nicer if we saw this film.
2. Dolgor is the worst cook amongst us.
3. It was a good thing that we didn't go to the countryside yesterday.
4. I discussed this work with my boss.
5. My brother's horse is faster than Dorj's, but mine is the fastest.
6. I saw this film only once.
7. -Were the buuz Dulmaa cooked any good?
8. -No, the ones Baatar cooked were tastier.
9. Who is the man who is talking with the teacher?
10. I can say the red car is older than the black one.

Chapter Fourteen

TEXT

Taking the hammer and going back home the young man saw a marmot running. He waved the hammer towards it, saying "Tab yab", the marmot died. He took the marmot and carried it home. Seeing many gazelles going along outside his yurt he flourished the hammer and said "Tab yab", and all of them dropped dead. After that the young man and his wife ate the gazelles' meat until they were satisfied.

Thus they lived peacefully, but one day the servant-girl of the prince came again. She asked the couple:

-Well, how are you getting on?

The young man said:

-I found a precious hammer. We hunt gazelles with it and live comfortably.

Hearing it the servant-girl went back to her prince and told him what the young man had said. Hearing that, the prince again sent a man, who brought the young man together with his hammer.

-What kind of magic does your hammer have? What does it do? asked the prince.

-My hammer is a magic hammer. If you say “Tab yab” and flourish it towards any animal you see, it will die, answered the young man.

Then the prince saw a dog running along on the border of the settlement and said, “Wave it at that!”. When the young man said “Tab yab” and waved his hammer towards the dog the prince had pointed at, it dropped dead.

Seeing that, the prince again asked him:

-Well, will you give your hammer away or will you have your head cut off?

-I will neither give you my hammer nor let you take my head off! the young man said.

At those words the prince got angry and said:

-What is this misbehaved dog barking about? Get his hammer and give it to me!

But the young man said:

-Tab yab the prince, tab yab the queen and tab yab everybody from the prince’s court!

Thus he killed them all.

Then he sat on the throne, started to govern his land and lived happily ever after...

DRILLS

i)

- a) зодолдсон
- b) маргалддаг
- c) үнсэлцэв
- d) барилддаг
- e) зодолддог уу
- f) зодолдсон

ii)

- a) ард
- b) хойшоо
- c) дээш
- d) хажуугаар
- e) баруун талд
- f) дотуур
- g) өмнүүр
- h) хойгуур

iii)

- a) цаана
- b) наана
- c) наана
- d) наана

iv)

- a) бүгдээс нь
- b) бүгдээрээ
- c) оюутнууд бүгдээрээ/цөмөөрөө

- d) энэ адуу бүгдээрээ
- e) автобус бүгдээрээ
- f) хүүхдүүд бүгдээрээ/цөмөөрөө
- g) чихрийг бүгдийг нь/цөмийг нь
- h) бид нар бүгдээрээ/цөмөөрөө

v)

- a) өндрөвтөр
- b) залуухан
- c) хоёрхон
- d) дөрөвхөн
- e) томовтор, багавтар
- f) хөхөвтөр
- g) багахан
- h) иймхэн

EXERCISES

b)

1. Чи замын аль талаар явж ирсэн бэ?
2. Чи Баатарын баруун талд суудаг уу?
3. -Энд яаж ирсэн бэ? Ирж байхыг чинь харсангүй.
4. -Би гүүрэн доогуур яваад ирсэн.
5. Энэ овоо сайхан зураг байна.
6. Тэр ногоовтор малгайтай хүнийг таних уу?
7. -Би энэ чихрийг бүгдийг нь (энэ бүх чихрийг) авч болох уу?
8. -Үгүй, болохгүй. Дөрөвхөн үлдсэн байна. Хоёр хоёроор нь авъя.
9. Өчигдөр уулын нөгөө талд буга явж байхыг би үзсэн.
10. Байшингийн ард ганцхан л мод байдаг, харин өмнө талд нь гурав байдаг.

c)

1. -How do you think the yesterday's film was?
2. -I think it was quite good.
3. There is a shop on the left side of the road.
4. There is a tall tree behind our school.
5. Bat went along the other side of the house, but you came along this side.
6. If you go to the south you can get the Bogd mountains.
7. I saw Baatar going downstairs.
8. All the students did not do their homework.
9. That man fought with a policeman.
10. Wrestlers wrestle during Tsagaan Sar.